

# Swahili

**Information provided by:**

**National African Language Resource Center (NALRC)**

## A). Why study Swahili?

Swahili (or Kiswahili as it is called when one is speaking the language) is the most important and widely studied indigenous language of Africa, the National and official language of Kenya and Tanzania. It is spoken as a native language on the East coast of Africa and the islands adjacent to the coast from Southern Somalia in the north down through the Kenyan and Tanzanian coasts.

It is also a Lingua franca of the African Continent spoken as a second language by millions of people mainly in Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda, and East Zaire. There are also speakers in Mozambique, Rwanda, Burundi, Zambia, Malawi, Southern Arabian countries such as Yemen and Oman, as well as other parts of the world.

It is aired in radio broadcasts such as the British Broadcast Corporation, Voice of America, and Deutsche Welle. It is heard in songs of famous singers such as Miriam Makeba and in popular films like the Lion King. African-Americans refer to their annual cultural festival as Kwanzaa, which is derived from the Swahili word kwanza or 'first.'

Swahili is taught in academic institutions from Japan in the East to Mexico in the west. It can be used to fulfill language requirements. The study of Swahili also provides interesting issues regarding language policies and language planning. Whatever the area of research one is in, be it linguistics, anthropology, geography, archaeology, or even sociology, knowledge of Swahili and its many varieties is essential if one is working in the East African region. There are many benefits of knowing the Swahili language, including the fact that it serves as a good vehicle to accessing Swahili culture. Swahili has a long written tradition and remarkable history. Finally, knowing Swahili enhances the credibility of researchers interested in East Africa.

## B). Who speaks Swahili?

### People and History

Over 50 million people in eastern and central African speak Swahili. It is widely used in Kenya, Tanzania and Uganda. A little over one million people speak it as their first language. Most others speak Swahili fluently as a second, third or fourth language. Those who speak it as a first language are found along the coast of east Africa stretching from southern Somalia to the border between Tanzania and Mozambique. There are also many native Swahili speakers on the Indian Ocean islands of Unguja and Pemba (which together make up Zanzibar), Lamu, the Comoro Islands and the northwestern part of Madagascar. Many Swahili speakers like to refer to themselves in terms of where they come from. So Swahili speakers from Unguja, for example, will refer to themselves as Waunguja or Wazanzibari, those from Kenya as Wakenya and those from Tanzania as Watanzania.

The East African coast was visited by Arabs and Persians as early as the second century A.D. These visitors settled in Africa and married local people. Many local people modified and adopted the visitors' traditions. On the island of Unguja, for example, the traditional New Year, Mwaka Kogwa, is celebrated during the month of June. This celebration is similar to the Persian New Year of Neiruz. Later visits by Arabs to the area also introduced the Islamic religion, and today many Swahili speakers throughout East Africa are Muslim. Travelers from Portugal, Germany, England and various Asian countries also went to East Africa. Each group left its mark on both the culture and the language. Like as a center of Swahili Language and Cultures, would be a place of interest to students.

## C). Language and Culture

Swahili is a Bantu language of the Niger-Congo family and has a typical, complicated Bantu structure. For example, Swahili utilizes over 13 noun classes, the equivalence of a romance language having 13 genders. Three full noun classes are devoted to different aspects of space and time. Swahili represents an African World view quite different from that of a European language.

Nouns are grouped into different classes according to their meaning. Human beings, for example, belong to one class: mtu 'person'/watu 'people.' Trees, on the other hand, belong to another class: mti 'tree'/miti 'trees'. Diminutive and augmentative meanings are also expressed using the noun class system. The following forms of the word ndege 'bird' indicate different sizes: ndege (regular size bird); kidege (small bird); dege (big bird).

The word Kiswahili is a general term for many varieties of the language spoken along the East African coast. It comes from the Arabic word sahel, meaning 'coast.' Ki- is a prefix referring to language. In some varieties of Swahili, the language prefix appears as chi-, as in Chimiini, which is spoken in Somalia, or shi-, as in Shingazija, a variant spoken on the Ngazija island of Comoro.

Swahili language has been influenced by a variety of other languages, including Arabic, Portuguese and German. There are many Swahili words with foreign origins, including the following: sita 'six' (Arabic), saba 'seven' (Arabic), shule 'school' (German), bendera 'flag' (Portuguese), kitabu 'book' (Arabic) and pesa 'money' (Hindi).

All Swahili speakers share a unique way of expressing time, day or night. Sunrise or sunset are the two focal points used to tell time. The first hour of the day, therefore, comes after sunrise, not after midnight, and the first hour of the night comes after sunset. Also unique to Swahili speakers is the way they communicate with each other indirectly by use of the popular language, also known as leso. This multi-purpose cloth usually has a caption that conveys a proverbial message to its target audience.

Lamu is an ancient Swahili city-state in the Indian Ocean off the north coast of Kenya. It is the main town to the traditional swahilini--the original crucible of Swahili culture. In December 2001, UNESCO granted World heritage status to Lamu's Old town citing the fact that the old town had retained its traditional functions for over 1000 years.

### About NALRC

4231 Humanities Building  
455 N. Park Street  
University of Wisconsin-Madison  
Madison, WI  
Phone: (608) 265-7905 Fax: (608) 265-7904  
Email: [nalrc@mhub.facstaff.wisc.edu](mailto:nalrc@mhub.facstaff.wisc.edu)

# Lesson 1: Classroom Instructions

## Classroom Instructions [maagizo ya darasani]

rudia	repeat
mwalmu	teacher
profesa	professor
mwanafunzi	student
jibu	answer; respond
uliza	ask
unaelewa?	do you understand?
mnaelewa?	do you all understand?
ndiyo	yes
la; hapana	no
swali	question
mna swali?	does anyone have a question?
mwalmu, nina swali	teacher, I have a question
sielewi	I do not understand
sikiliza	listen (s. command)
sikilizeni	listen (pl. command)
simama	stand
tafadhali, simama	please, stand
keti; kaa	sit
tafadhali, keti/kaa	please, sit down
kusanya	collect
karatasi	paper
tafadhali, kusanya karatasi	please, collect the papers
leta	bring
tafadhali, leta karatasi	please, bring the papers
enda	go
tafadhali, enda	please, go
tazama	look
funga kitabu	close the book
fungua kitabu	open the book
tafadhali	please
tafadhali rudia	please repeat
tafadhali, fungua kitabu	please, open the book
tafadhali, nyamaza	please, be quiet (sing.)
tafadhali, nyamazeni	please, be quiet (pl.)
tafadhali, ongea/zungumza/sema katika Kiingereza	please, speak in English
tafadhali, jibu katika/kwa Kiswahili	please, respond in Kiwahili
tafadhali, ongea/zungumza/sema katika Kiswahili	please, speak in Kiwahili
polepole	slowly
tafadhali, ongea/zungumza/sema polepole	please, speak slowly
taja	mention
tamka	pronounce
soma	read; study
andika	write

# Lesson 1: Classroom Instructions

andika kwa Kiswahili	write in Kiwahili
tafadhali soma	please read
kumbuka	remember (sing.)
mnakumbuka	remember (pl.)
jaribu	try
tena	again
jaribu tena	try again
tafadhali jaribu	please try
karibu	welcome
tafadhali fungua mlango	please open the door
tafadhali fungua mlango	please close the door
tafadhali kaa/keti	please sit (sing.)
"Crying" ni nini kwa Kiswahili?	What is "crying" in Kiwahili?
tafsiri	translate
chemsha bongo	brain teaser
sijui	I do not know
kwaheri	bye
kwaheri, tutaonana kesho	goodbye, hope to see you tomorrow
kwaheri, tutaonana baadaye	goodbye, hope to see you later
asante	thank you
asante sana	thank you very much
njoo	come
tafadhali, njoo	please, come
samahani	pardon; excuse me
samahani, mwalimu, nina swali	excuse me, teacher, I have a question
haraka	fast
tafadhali, ongea/zumgumza/sema haraka haraka	please, speak quicker
vizuri	good
vizuri sana	very good
Wewe ni mzuri.	You are good.
Wewe ni mbaya.	You are bad.
kazi nzuri	good work
kazi ya nyumbani	homework
Leo tutasoma _____.	Today we will learn _____.
Jana tulisoma nini?	What did we learn/study yesterday?
Leo tumesoma nini?	What have we learned/studied today?

# Lesson 2a:

## Greetings

### Greetings [maamkio; salamu]

There are at least five ways of greeting in Kiswahili:

- A). Habari gani?
- B). Hujambo?
- C). U hali gani?
- D). Shikamoo.
- E). Mambo? / Vipi?

### A). Habari gani?

Example 1 - *Two people greeting each other*

Person A: **Habari gani?**

Person B: **Nzuri!**

Sentensi:

- a). Nzuri / njema / salama / safi / sawa / poa.  
[Good / nice / peaceful / clean / fine / cool.]
- b). Nzuri / njema / salama / safi / sawa / poa **sana...**  
[**Very** good / nice / peaceful / clean / fine / cool.]
- c). Nzuri / njema / salama / safi / sawa / poa **tu...**  
[**Just** good / nice / peaceful / clean / fine / **just** cool.]

### B). Hujambo?

Example 1 - *Two people greeting each other*

Person A: **Hujambo?**

Person B: **Sijambo!**

Sentensi:

Example 2 - *Teacher greeting students*

Teacher: **Hamjambo?**

Students: **Hatujambo!**

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| Hujambo?   | [Any issue(s)? / <i>How are you doing?</i> ] |
| Sijambo!   | [No issue(s)! / <i>I am okay/fine!</i> ]     |
| Hamjambo?  | [Any issue(s)? / <i>How are you doing?</i> ] |
| Hatujambo! | [No issue(s)! / <i>We are okay/fine!</i> ]   |

## C). U hali gani?

Example 1 - *Two people greeting each other*

Person A: **U hali gani?**

Person B: **Njema.**

Example 2 - *One person greeting many people*

Person A: **M hali gani?**

Persons B, C, & D: **Salama.**

Sentensi:

1. U hali gani? / M hali gani?

What's your condition? / *How are you?*]

a). Nzuri / njema / salama / safi / sawa / poa.

[Good / nice / peaceful / clean / fine / cool.]

b). Nzuri / njema / salama / safi / sawa / poa **sana...**

[**Very** good / nice / peaceful / clean / fine / cool.]

c). Nzuri / njema / salama / safi / sawa / poa **tu...**

[**Just** good / nice / peaceful / clean / fine / **just** cool.]

## D.) Shikamoo.

Example 1 - *A youth greeting an elder person*

Youth: **Shikamoo.**

Elder Person: **Marahaba.**

Sentensi:

Shikamoo. [I touch your feet.]

Marahaba. [I am delighted.]

## E). Vipi? / Mambo?

Example 1 - *A youth greeting another youth*

Youth A: **Vipi?**

Youth B: **Poa.**

Example 2 - *A youth greeting another youth*

Youth A: **Mambo?**

Youth B: **Safi.**

Sentensi:

Vipi? / Mambo? [What's up?]

Poa / Safi / Sawa. [Cool / Clean / Fine.]

## Additional Vocabulary

Mifano:	
<b>1. Hodi!</b>	[ <i>Requests permission to enter a house.</i> ]
<b>2. Karibu!</b>	[Welcome!]
<b>3. Karibu ndani!</b>	[Welcome inside!]
<b>4. Asante.</b>	[Thank you.]
<b>5. Asante sana.</b>	[Thank you very much.]
<b>6. Kwaheri.</b>	[Be blessed. / <i>Goodbye.</i> ]
<b>7. Tutaonana baadaye.</b>	[We will see each other later.]
<b>8. Habari za asubuhi/ mchana/jioni/usiku?</b>	[How is the news of the morning/afternoon/evening/night?]
<b>9. Habari za mama/baba/kaka/dada/ ndugu/mjomba</b>	[How is the news of mother/father/brother/sister/ comrade/uncle]
<b>10. Habari za nyumbani/shuleni/chuoni/ masomo/Amerika</b>	[How is the news at home/at school/at college/ studies/America]



# Lesson 2b:

## Other Forms of Greetings

### Greetings

Mifano:

Waambaje?	[How are you doing?]	Sina la kuamba.	[I have nothing to say.]
Salaamaleikum.	[Peace be upon you.]	Aleikumsalaam.	[And also with you.]
Upo?	[Are you there?]	Nipo.	[I am here.]
Lala salama.	[Sleep peacefully.]	Nawe pia.	[And you also.]
Tuonane kesho.	[See you tomorrow.]	Inshallah.	[God willing.]
Ndoto njema.	[Dream well.]	Za mafanikio.	[Of success.]
Lala unono.	[Sleep comfortably.]	Nawe pia.	[And you also.]
Usiku mwema.	[Good night.]	Wa buraha.	[With tranquility.]
Usingizi mwema.	[Sleep well.]	Wa buraha.	[With tranquility.]
Habari za kutwa?	[How was your day?]	Njema/Nzuri.	[Good.]
Jioni njema.	[Good Evening]	Salama!	[Peaceful!]
Uende salama	[Go with peace.]	Tuonane inshallah!	[We will see each other God willing]

# Lesson 2c:

## Respectful Terms That Accompany Greetings

### Respectful Terms

Salamu, Adabu, Heshima , Tafside  
[Peace, Politeness, Honorable, Civil]

Mifano:

Samahani	[Excuse me]
Niwe radhi	[My apologies/Pardon me]
Tafadhali	[Please]
Pole	[Sorry]
Makiwa	[Term used to express condolences]
Asante	[Thank you]
Heko/Hongera	[Congratulations]
Shukrani	[Thanks]
Inshallah	[God willing]
Binti	[Daughter of]
Bin	[Son of]
Bi/Biti	[Miss/Ms.]
Bibi	[Mrs.]
Bwana	[Mr./Sir]
Marehemu	[The late]
Bimdogo	[Little miss / young lady]
Bwanamdogo	[Little sir / young man ]
Bimkubwa	[Middle aged/ elderly woman]
Bwanamkubwa	[Middle aged / elderly man]]
Hayati	[Distinguished deceased person]
Ustadh	[Distinguished scholar]
Guru	[Spiritual leader / expert/innovative person]

# Lesson 3:

## Classroom Vocabulary

### Classroom Vocabulary [msamiati wa darasani]

#### A). Vocabulary

mlango / milango	[door/ doors]
dirisha / madirisha	[window / windows]
taa / taa	[light / lights]
ubao / mbao	[board / boards]
kompyuta / kompyuta	[computer / computers]
kiti / viti	[chair / chairs]
meza / meza	[table / tables]
kalamu / kalamu	[pen / pens]
penseli / penseli	[pencil / pencils]
mkoba / mikoba	[bag for books / bags for books]
mfuko / mifuko	[bag of books / bags of books]
kitabu / vitabu	[book / books]
daftari / madaftari	[notebook / notebooks]
kabati / makabati	[cupboard / cupboards]
rula / rula	[ruler / rulers]
ufutio / futio	[eraser / erasers]
wino / wino	[ink / inks]
ukuta / kuta	[wall / walls]
sakafu / sakafu	[floor / floors]
dari / dari	[ceiling / ceilings]
paa / paa	[roof / roofs]
simu / simu	[telephone / telephones]
karatasi / karatasi	[paper / papers]
jaa / jaa	[litter bin / litter bins]
chaki / chaki	[chalk / chalks]
zulia / mazulia	[carpet / carpets]
swichi	[switch]
swichi ya feni	[fan switch]
swichi ya taa	[light switch]

<b>mwanafunzi / wanafunzi</b>	<b>[student / students]</b>
<b>mwalimu / walimu</b>	<b>[teacher / teachers]</b>
<b>kalenda/kalenda</b>	<b>[calendar / calendars]</b>
<b>saa / saa</b>	<b>[clock / clocks]</b>
<b>saa ya ukuta</b>	<b>[wall clock]</b>
<b>ramani / ramani</b>	<b>[map / maps]</b>
<b>kiyoyozi / viyoyozi</b>	<b>[air conditioner / air conditioners]</b>
<b>picha / picha</b>	<b>[picture / pictures]</b>
<b>mchoro / michoro</b>	<b>[drawing / drawings]</b>
<b>pazia / mapazia</b>	<b>[curtain / curtains]</b>
<b>runinga/televisheni</b>	<b>[television / televisions]</b>
<b>video/video</b>	<b>[video / videos]</b>
<b>kengele / kengele</b>	<b>[bell / bells]</b>
<b>chati / jedwali</b>	<b>[chart / charts]</b>
<b>rejesta / rejesta</b>	<b>[register / registers]</b>
<b>bendera / bendera</b>	<b>[flag / flags]</b>
<b>bendera ya taifa</b>	<b>[national flag]</b>
<b>kengele / kengele</b>	<b>[bell / bells]</b>
<b>mlinzi / bawabu / walinzi</b>	<b>[security / security]</b>
<b>saa / saa</b>	<b>[clock / clocks]</b>
<b>saa ya ukuta</b>	<b>[wall clock]</b>
<b>chati / jedwali</b>	<b>[chart / charts]</b>
<b>ramani / ramani</b>	<b>[map / maps]</b>
<b>kalenda / kalenda</b>	<b>[calendar]</b>
<b>rejista / rejista</b>	<b>[register / roll call]</b>
<b>majilisi / masjala / ofisi</b>	<b>[office / staff room]</b>
<b>picha / picha</b>	<b>[picture/ pictures]</b>
<b>deski / dawati</b>	<b>[desk]</b>
<b>gazeti / magazeti</b>	<b>[newspaper / newspapers]</b>
<b>jarida / majarida</b>	<b>[journal / periodical]</b>
<b>habari / habari</b>	<b>[news]</b>
<b>barua / barua</b>	<b>[letter / letters]</b>
<b>makala / makala</b>	<b>[article / articles]</b>
<b>insha / insha</b>	<b>[essay / essays]</b>
<b>kumbukumbu / kumbukumbu</b>	<b>[record / records]</b>
<b>kabrasha / ripoti maalum</b>	<b>[pamphlet / meeting documents]</b>

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Darasa hili lina vitu gani?

[What things does this classroom have?]

Darasa hili lina meza, mkoba, chaki, ubao...

[This classroom has a table, backpack, chalk, board...]

### 2. Hii ni nini?

[What is this?]

Hii ni meza.

[This is a table.]

### 3. Huu ni nini?

[What is this? (referring to wall)]

Huu ni ukuta.

[This is a wall.]

### 4. (Wewe) Hupendi mapambo gani?

[Which decorations don't you like?]

(Mimi) Sipendi \_\_\_\_\_. [I don't like \_\_\_\_\_.]

# Lesson 4:

## Personal Pronouns

Personal Pronouns [viwakilishi - nafsi]
<p>There are three personal pronouns in Swahili:</p> <p>A). First person pronoun</p> <p>B). Second person pronoun</p> <p>C). Third person pronoun</p> <p>Each personal pronoun has a singular and a plural form.</p>

A). First Person Pronoun	
<u>Umoja [singular]</u> <b>Mimi</b> [I/Me] Represented by <b>NI-</b>	<u>Wingi [plural]</u> <b>Sisi</b> [We/Us] Represented by <b>TU-</b>
Sentensi:	
Mimi <b>ninaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[I am called Jeremy. / <i>My name is Jeremy.</i> ]
Sisi <b>tunaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[We are called Jeremy. / <i>Our names are Jeremy.</i> ]

B). Second Person Pronoun	
<u>Umoja [singular]</u> <b>Wewe</b> [You] Represented by <b>U-</b>	<u>Wingi [plural]</u> <b>Nyinyi/Ninyi</b> [You (pl.)] Represented by <b>M-</b>
Sentensi:	
Wewe <b>unaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[You are called Jeremy. / <i>Your name is Jeremy.</i> ]
Nyinyi/Ninyi <b>mnaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[You (pl.) are called Jeremy. / <i>Your names are Jeremy.</i> ]

C). Third Person Pronoun	
<u>Umoja [singular]</u> <b>Yeye</b> [He/She, Her/Him] Represented by <b>A-</b>	<u>Wingi [plural]</u> <b>Wao</b> [They/Them] Represented by <b>WA-</b>

Sentensi:	
Yeye <b>anaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[He is called Jeremy. / <i>His name is Jeremy.</i> ]
Wao <b>wanaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[They are called Jeremy. / <i>Their names are Jeremy.</i> ]

Muhtasari [Summary]		
Nafsi [Personal Pronoun]		Kiwakilishi [Marker]
<b>1<sup>st</sup> Person:</b> <b>Mimi</b> <b>Sisi</b>	[I/Me] [We/Us]	<b>NI-</b> <b>TU-</b>
<b>2<sup>nd</sup> Person:</b> <b>Wewe</b> <b>Nyinyi/Ninyi</b>	[You] [You (pl.)]	<b>U-</b> <b>M-</b>
<b>3<sup>rd</sup> Person:</b> <b>Yeye</b> <b>Wao</b>	[He/She, Her/Him] [They/Them]	<b>A-</b> <b>WA-</b>

Zingatia [Note]	
ita	[call]
itwa	[be called]
Ninaitwa ____ .	[I am called ____ . / <i>My name is ____.</i> ]
Nani?	[Who?/What is his/her name?]
Na wewe je?	[And what about you?]

Question Formation	
Mifano:	
<b>1. Wewe <u>n</u>aitwa nani?</b>	
[What is your name?]	
Mimi <b><u>n</u>inaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[I am called Jeremy / <i>My name is Jeremy.</i> ]
<b>2. Nyinyi <u>m</u>naitwa nani?</b>	
[What are your names?]	
Sisi <b><u>t</u>unaitwa</b> Jeremy.	[We are called Jeremy/ <i>Our names are Jeremy.</i> ]

### 3. Yeye anaitwa nani?

[What is he/she called? / *What is his/her name?*]

Yeye anaitwa Jeremy.

[He is called Jeremy / *His name is Jeremy.*]

### 4. Wao wanaitwa nani?

[What are they called? / *What are their names?*]

Wao wanaitwa Jeremy.

[They are called / *Their names are Jeremy.*]

### 5. Mimi ninaitwa John.

[I am called John]

Na wewe je?

[And what about you?]

Mimi ninaitwa Andrew.

[I am called Andrew.]



# Lesson 5:

## Possessive Pronouns

### Possessive Pronouns [vivumishi vimilikishi]

There are three possessive pronouns in Swahili:

- A). First person possessive
- B). Second person possessive
- C). Third person possessive

Each possessive pronoun has a singular and a plural form.

#### A). First Person Possessive

<u>Umoja [singular]</u> <b>-ANGU [my]</b>		<u>Wingi [plural]</u> <b>-ETU [our]</b>	
Mifano:			
Mwalimu <b>wangu</b>	[My teacher]	Mwalimu <b>wetu</b>	[Our teacher]
Walimu <b>wangu</b>	[My teachers]	Walimu <b>wetu</b>	[Our teachers]

#### B). Second Person Possessive

<u>Umoja [singular]</u> <b>-AKO [your]</b>		<u>Wingi [plural]</u> <b>-ENU [your (pl.)]</b>	
Mifano:			
Kalamu <b>yako</b>	[Your pen]	Kalamu <b>yenu</b>	[Your (pl.) pen]
Kalamu <b>zako</b>	[Your pens]	Kalamu <b>zenu</b>	[Your (pl.) pens]

#### C). Third Person Possessive

<u>Umoja [singular]</u> <b>-AKE [his/her]</b>		<u>Wingi [plural]</u> <b>-AO [their]</b>	
Mifano:			
Jina <b>lake</b>	[His/her name]	Jina <b>lao</b>	[Their name]
Majina <b>yake</b>	[His/her names]	Majina <b>yao</b>	[Their names]

## Muhtasari [Summary]

<i>1<sup>st</sup> Person Singular:</i> <b>-ANGU</b> [My]	<i>1<sup>st</sup> Person Plural:</i> <b>-ETU</b> [Our]
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> Person Singular:</i> <b>-AKO</b> [Your]	<i>2<sup>nd</sup> Person Plural:</i> <b>-ENU</b> [Your (pl.)]
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> Person Singular:</i> <b>-AKE</b> [His/Her]	<i>3<sup>rd</sup> Person Plural:</i> <b>-AO</b> [Their]

## Zingatia [Note]

-angu	[my]
-ako	[your]
-ake	[his/her]
jina	[name]
langu	[my]
lako	[your]
lake	[his/her]
nani?	[Who? What is his/her name?]
ni	[is]

## Question Formation

Mifano:	
<b>1. Jina langu ni nani?</b> [What is my name?]	
Jina laku ni Peter.	[Your name is Peter.]
<b>2. Jina laku ni nani?</b> [What is your name?]	
Jina langu ni Darnell.	[My name is Darnell.]
<b>3. Jina lake ni nani?</b> [What is his/her name?]	
Jina lake ni Don.	[His/her name is Don.]
<b>4. Jina laku ni nani mama/mwalimu?</b> [What is your name, mom/teacher?]	

# Lesson 6:

## School Subjects

**School Subjects**

**[masomo]**

### A). School Subjects

afya ja jamii	[community health]
akiolojia; elimu kale	[archeology]
anthropolojia	[anthropology]
bayolojia	[biology]
biashara	[business]
botania	[botany]
dini	[religion]
elimu	[education]
elimu ya kompyuta	[computer science]
elimu ya maktaba; ukutubi	[library science/studies]
elimu ya mazingira	[environmental science]
elimu ya mawasiliano	[communication studies]
elimu ya siasa	[political science]
elimu ya usimamizi wa fedha	[finance]
falsafa	[philosophy]
fasihi	[literature]
fizikia	[physics]
hisabati; hesabu	[math]
historia	[history]
isimu (ya lugha)	[linguistics]
jiografia	[geography]
jiolojia	[geology]
kemia	[chemistry]
Kihispania	[Spanish]
lishe	[nutrition]
lugha	[language]
masomo ya Kiafrika	[African studies]
masomo ya maendeleo	[development studies]
masomo ya wanawake	[women's studies]
matibabu ya watoto	[pediatrics]
meteorolojia	[meteorology]
mipango ya miji	[urban planning]

muziki	[music]
saikolojia	[psychology]
sanaa	[fine arts]
sanaa za maonyesho	[theater arts]
sayansi	[science]
sayansi kimu	[home economics]
sayansi ya jamii	[social science]
sayansi ya mimea	[plant science]
sheria	[law]
sosholojia	[sociology]
uandishi	[journalism]
uchumi	[economics]
uganga; udaktari	[medicine]
uhandisi	[engineering]
unesi	[nursing]
uongozi; manejimenti	[management]
upasuaji	[surgery]
usanifu majengo	[architecture]
utangazaji	[advertising]

### Zingatia [Note]

Some academic subjects are expressed by using *elimu* or *masomo*. However, school subjects that are not listed with *elimu* or *masomo* could optionally be expressed by using the following structure: *elimu ya biashara*, *elimu ya dini*, *masomo ya dini*, *elimu ya uhandisi*, etc.

soma	[study]	Gani?	[What?/which?]
katika	[at/within]	Nini?	[What?]
chuo kikuu	[university]	Wapi?	[Where?]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Wewe unasoma masomo gani?

[What subjects do you study? / *What do you study?*]

Mimi ninasoma historia.

[I study history.]

### 2. Wewe unasoma nini?

[What do you study?]

Mimi ninasoma historia na kemia.

[I study history and chemistry.]

### 3. Wewe unasoma wapi?

[Where do you study?]

Mimi ninasoma katika chuo kikuu cha Kansas.

[I study at the University of Kansas.]

How to introduce yourself and what you study:

- Jina langu ni Sheila/Ninaitwa Sheila. Ninasoma historia katika chuo kikuu cha Kansas. Na wewe je?
- [*My name is Sheila/I'm called Sheila. I study history at the University of Kansas. What about you?*]

# Lesson 7a:

## Continents

### Continents [Mabara]

#### A). Continents

Mfano:

Bara la Afrika / Bara Afrika	[African continent]
Bara la Ulaya / Bara Uropa	[European continent]
Bara Amerika Kusini	[South American continent]
Bara Amerika Kaskazini	[North American continent]
Bara Asia / Hindi	[Asian continent]
Bara Australia	[Australian continent]
Bara Antakitika	[Antarctica]

# Lesson 7b:

## Countries

### Countries [nchi]

Countries take three different forms:

- U-prefix
- Some change completely
- Some do not change at all

### A). Countries

Marekani; Amerika	[USA]
Uingereza	[England]
Mashariki ya kati	[Middle East]
Misri	[Egypt]
Uchina	[China]
Italia; Italiano	[Italy]
Uswidi	[Sweden]
Uswisi	[Switzerland]
Ufaransa	[France]
Uhispania; Uhispaniola	[Spain]
Ureno	[Portugal]
Ujapani	[Japan]
Ujerumani	[Germany]
Uturuki	[Turkey]
Somalia; Usomali	[Somalia]
Urusi	[Russia]
Ugiriki	[Greece]
Uyahudi; Israeli; Israili	[Israel]
Uholanzi	[Netherlands; Holland]
Ubeljiji	[Belgium]
India	[India]
Korea	[Korea]
Kenya	[Kenya]
Tanzania	[Tanzania]
Uganda	[Uganda]

Msumbuji	[Mozambique]
Ushelisheli	[Seychelles]
Udachi	[Netherlands]
Bukini	[Madagascar]
Kongo	[Congo]
Serikali ya Demokrasia ya Congo	[Democratic Republic of Congo]
Mifano Zaidi:	
Ulaya; Uropa	[Europe]
Ufini; Finland	[Finland]
Uajemi	[Iran; Persia]
Palestina	[Palestine]
Uyunani	[Palestine before 1948]
Uyorodani	[Jordan]
Uhabashi	[Ethiopia]
Norwei	[Norway]
Meksiko	[Mexico]
Kanada	[Canada]
Israili	[Israel]
Lesutu	[Lesotho]
Afrika ya kusini; Afrika Kusini	[South Africa]
Poland	[Poland]
Ukraine	[Ukraine]
Romania	[Romania]
Iraq	[Iraq]
Burundi	[Burundi]
Rwanda	[Rwanda]
Botswana	[Botswana]
Malawi	[Malawi]
Nigeria	[Nigeria]
Senegal	[Senegal]
Zingatia [note]	
toka	[come from]
nchi	[country]
gani?	[which?; what?]



## Question Formation

Mifano:

### **1. (Wewe) Unatoka nchi gani?**

[Which country do you come from?]

a. (Mimi) Ninatoka nchi ya Marekani/Amerika.

[I come from America/U.S.A.]

b. (Mimi) Ninatoka Tanzania / nchi ya Tanzania.

[I come from Tanzania]

c. (Mimi) Ninatoka Kenya / nchi ya Kenya.

[I come from Kenya]

# Lesson 7c:

## Nationality

### Nationality [uraia]

To refer to people's nationalities, the prefix **M-** is used for singular and **WA-** for plural.

#### A). Nationality

Mmarekani; Mwamerika	[American person]
Mwiingereza	[English/British person]
Mmisri	[Egyptian person]
Mchina	[Chinese person]
Mwitalia; Mtaliano	[Italian person]
Mswidi	[Swedish person]
Mswisi	[Swiss person]
Mfaransa	[French person]
Mhispania	[Spanish person]
Mreno	[Portuguese person]
Mjapani	[Japanese person]
Mjerumani	[German person]
Mturuki	[Turkish person]
Msomali; Msomalia	[Somali person]
Mrusi	[Russian person]
Mgiriki	[Greek person]
Mholanzi	[Dutch person]
Mbeljiji	[Belgian person]
Mhindi	[Indian person]
Mkorea	[Korean person]
Mkenya	[Kenyan person]
Mtanzania	[Tanzanian person]
Mganda	[Ugandan person]
Mmsumbuji	[Mozambican person]
Mzungu	[Caucasian person]
Mwafrika	[African person]
Mfini	[Finnish person]
Mwajemi	[Iranian person]
Myahudi	[Palestinian person]
Myorodani	[Jordanian person]

Mhabashi	[Ethiopian person]
Mnorwei	[Norwegian person]
Mmeksikana	[Mexican person]
Mkanada	[Canadian]
Mwisraeli	[Israeli person]
Msutu	[Mosotho (Lesotho) person]
Mwafrika Kusini	[South African person]
Mpoland	[Polish person]
Mkraine	[Ukrainian person]
Mromania	[Romanian person]
Miraq	[Iraqi person]
Mrundi	[Burundian person]
Mrwanda	[Rwandan person]
Mbotswana	[Motswana (Botswana) person]
Mmalawi	[Malawian person]
Mnigeria	[Nigerian person]
Msenegal	[Senegalese person]
Mshelisheli	[Seychellois (Seychelles) person]
Mdachi	[Dutch person]
Mbukini	[Malagasy (Madagascar) person]
Mkongo	[Congolese person]

Zingatia [note]	
uraia	[nationality]
mraia	[a national]
wako	[yours]
gani?	[which?; what?]
kwa hivyo	[therefore]

## Question Formation

Mfano:

### 1. Uraia wako ni gani?

[What is your nationality?]

- a). Mimi ninatoka nchi ya **Marekani**, kwa hivyo mimi ni **Mmarekani**.  
[I come from the **U.S.A.**, so I am **American**.]
- b). Mimi ninatoka nchi ya **Kenya**, kwa hivyo mimi ni **Mkenya**.  
[I come from **Kenya**, so I am **Kenyan**.]
- c). Mimi ninatoka **Kanada**, kwa hivyo mimi ni **Mkanada**.  
[I come from **Canada**, so I am **Canadian**.]
- d). Mimi ninatoka **Afrika**, kwa hivyo mimi ni **Mwafrika**.  
[I come from **Africa**, so I am **African**.]

# Lesson 7d:

## Languages

### Languages [lugha]

All languages take the prefix -Ki-.

#### Mifano:

Kiswahili	[Kiswahili]
Kiingereza	[English]
Kifaransa	[French]

#### A). Languages

Kiingereza; Kizungu; Kimombo	[English]
Kiarabu	[Arabic]
Kichina	[Chinese]
Kiitaliano; Kiitalia	[Italian]
Kiswidi	[Swedish]
Kiswisi	[Swiss]
Kifaransa	[French]
Kihispania; Kihispaniola	[Spanish]
Kireno	[Portuguese]
Kijapani	[Japanese]
Kijerumani	[German]
Kituruki	[Turkish]
Kisomali	[Somali]
Kirusi	[Russian]
Kigiriki	[Greek]
Kilatini	[Latin]
Kiyahudi	[Hebrew]
Kiholanzi; Kidachi	[Dutch]
Kihindi	[Hindi]
Kikorea	[Korean]
Kiswahili	[Swahili]
Kiganda	[Luganda (Uganda)]
Kihausa	[Hausa (Nigeria/Niger)]
Kikongo	[Congolese (Congo)]
Kinywarwanda	[Rwandese (Rwanda)]
Kiyoruba	[Yoruba (Nigeria)]
Kizulu	[Zulu (South Africa)]
Kiwolof	[Wolof (Senegal/Gambia)]

Kibamana	[Bamana (Ivory Coast)]
Kilingala	[Lingala (Democratic Rep. of Congo)]
Kiafrikana	[Afrikaans (South Africa)]
Kishona	[Shona (Zimbabwe)]
Kiajemi	[Persian]

Zingatia [note]	
lugha	[language]
gani?	[which?; what?]
na	[and]
kingi	[a lot]
kidogo	[a little]
sana	[a lot; very much]
sema / ongea / zungumza	[speak]
Question Formation	
Mifano:	
<b>1. (Wewe) Unasema/Unaongea/Unazungumza lugha gani?</b> [What language(s) do you speak?]	
<b>a).</b> (Mimi) Ninasema/Ninaongea/Ninazungumza Kiingereza. [I speak English.]	
<b>b).</b> (Mimi) Ninasema/Ninaongea/Ninazungumza Kiingereza na Kiswahili. [I speak English and Kiswahili.]	
<b>c).</b> (Mimi) Ninasema/Ninaongea/Ninazungumza Kiingereza, Kiswahili, na Kichina. [I speak English, Kiswahili, and Chinese.]	
<b>d).</b> (Mimi) Ninasema/Ninaongea/Ninazungumza Kiingereza kingi na Kiswahili kidogo. [I speak a lot of English and a little Kiswahili.]	
<b>e).</b> (Mimi) Ninasema/Ninaongea/Ninazungumza Kiingereza sana. [I speak English a lot.]	

# Lesson 8:

## Locations

### Locations [kutoka na kukaa/kuishi]

How to talk about location and introduce yourself in detail:

- Name
- Country, State, City
- Current residence
- School
- Languages you speak

### A). Locations

bara	[continent]
nchi	[country]
jimbo	[state]
jiji	[big city]
wilaya	[district; county]
mji	[city]
kijiji	[village]
kitongoji	[small village; hamlet]
mtaa	[neighborhood]
kisiwa	[island]
tarafa	[division]
kata	[ward]
kiunga	[suburb; outskirt]
mkoa	[province]

### Zingatia [Note]

toka	[come from]
kaa/ishi	[live; reside]
barabara	[street; road]
karibu na	[near]
lakini	[but]
kwa sasa	[for now]
katika	[at; within]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Wewe unatoka wapi?

[Where do you come from?]

Mimi ninatoka jimbo la Kansas, mji wa Lawrence.

[I come from the state of Kansas, city of Lawrence.]

### 2. Wewe unakaa/unaishi wapi?

[Where do you live?]

Mimi ninakaa/ninaishi mji wa Lawrence.

[I live in the city of Lawrence.]

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Your name

Jina langu ni / Mimi ninaitwa \_\_\_\_\_. [My name is / I am called \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 2. Where you come from and Where you live now

Mimi ninatoka nchi ya \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
jimbo la \_\_\_\_\_ , mji wa \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
lakini kwa sasa

mimi ninaishi/ninakaa mtaa wa \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
karibu na \_\_\_\_\_ , barabara ya \_\_\_\_\_ .

[I come from the country of \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
the state of \_\_\_\_\_ , the city of \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
but for now

I live in the neighborhood of \_\_\_\_\_ ,  
near \_\_\_\_\_ , street/avenue of \_\_\_\_\_ .]

### 3. What you study and Where

Ninasoma \_\_\_\_\_ katika chuo kikuu cha \_\_\_\_\_ . [I study \_\_\_\_\_ at the University of \_\_\_\_\_ .]

### 4. What languages you speak

Ninazungumza \_\_\_\_\_ .

Ninasema/Ninaongea Kiingereza  
kingi na Kiswahili kidogo.

[I speak \_\_\_\_\_ .]

[I speak a lot of English and a little  
Kiswahili.]



How to introduce yourself in detail: [Jitambulisha kwa undani:]

- Jina langu ni Tyrone/Ninaitwa Tyrone. Mimi ninatoka nchi ya Amerika, jimbo la Kansas, mji wa Kansas City, lakini kwa sasa mimi ninaishi/ninakaa mtaa wa Lawrence, karibu na McDonald's, barabara ya 23rd. Ninasoma mawasiliano katika chuo kikuu cha Kansas. Ninasema Kiingereza kingi na Kiswahili kidogo.
- *[My name is Tyrone/I am called Tyrone. I come from America, the state of Kansas, city of Kansas City, but now I live/stay/reside in Lawrence, near McDonald's on 23<sup>rd</sup> Street. I study communication at the University of Kansas. I speak a lot of English and a little Kiswahili.]*

# Lesson 9:

## Swahili Noun Classes

### Noun Classes [ngeli za Kiswahili]

Nouns in Kiswahili are grouped into various noun classes because of two main reasons:

**1.their characteristics as a noun**

**2.Kiswahili's vowel harmony**

There are 9 noun classes in Kiswahili. Each noun class has both a singular and a plural form, to make 18 total.

<b>M - WA</b>	<b>[A - WA]</b>
<b>KI - VI</b>	<b>[KI - VI]</b>
<b>M - MI</b>	<b>[U - I]</b>
<b>JI - MA</b>	<b>[LI - YA]</b>
<b>N - N</b>	<b>[I - ZI]</b>
<b>U - U</b>	<b>[U - ZI]</b>
<b>U - U</b>	<b>[U - U]</b>
<b>KU - KU</b>	<b>[KU - KU]</b>
<b>PA - PA</b>	<b>[PA - PA]</b>
<b>MU - MU</b>	<b>[MU - MU]</b>

# Lesson 9a:

## Noun Classes

### M - WA

<b>M - WA</b>	<b>[A - WA]</b>
KI - VI	[KI - VI]
M - MI	[U - I]
JI - MA	[LI - YA]
N - N	[I - ZI]
U - U	[U - ZI]
U - U	[U - U]
KU - KU	[KU - KU]
PA - PA	[PA - PA]
MU - MU	[MU - MU]

### M - WA [A - WA]

This noun class has the following nouns:

- A).** nouns of people that start with **M-** in singular and **WA-** in plural
- B).** other nouns of people
- C).** wanyama [animals]
- D).** ndege [birds]
- E).** wadudu [insects]
- F).** samaki [fish]

## A). Nouns of people that start with **M-** in singular and **WA-** in plural

mtoto/watoto	[child/children]
mgeni/wageni	[visitor/visitors]
mfaransa/wafaransa	[French person/French people]
mjomba/wajomba	[uncle/uncle]
mke/wake	[wife/wives]
mkulima/wakulima	[farmer/farmers]
mpishi/wapishi	[cook/cooks]
msichana/wasichana	[girl/girls]
mtu/watu	[person/people]
mume/waume	[husband/husbands]
mvulana/wavulana	[boy/boys]
mzee/wazee	[elder/elders]
mzungu/wazungu	[white person /white people]
mjerumani/wajerumani	[German person/German people]
mwanamume/wanaume	[man/men]
mwanamke/wanawake	[woman/women]
mwalimu/walimu	[teacher/teachers]
mwanafunzi/wanafunzi	[student/students]
mwafrika/waafrika	[African person/African people]
mpwa / wapwa	[niece / nieces / nephew / nephews]

## B). Other nouns of people

baba/baba	[father/fathers]
babu/babu	[grandfather/grandfathers]
dada/dada	[sister/sisters]
kaka/kaka	[brother/brothers]
mama/mama	[mother/mothers]
nyanya/nyanya	[grandmother/grandmothers]
rafiki/rafiki	[friend/friends]
shangazi/shangazi	[aunt/aunts]
kipofu/vipofu	[blind person/blind people]
kiziwi/viziwi	[deaf person/deaf people]
kijana / vijana	[youth / youths]
amu / amu	[uncle / uncles (paternal)]
mwamu / mwamu	[sister-in-law/brother-in-law/sister-in-laws/brother-in-laws]

## C). Wanyama [animals]

mbwa/mbwa	[dog/dogs]
paka/paka	[cat/cats]
ng'ombe/ng'ombe	[cow/cows]
simba/simba	[lion/lions]
ndovu/ndovu	[elephant/elephants]
kifaru / vifaru	[rhinoceros / rhinoceroses]
mbewha / mbweha	[fox / foxes / jackal / jackals]
dubu / dubu	[bear / bears]
duma / duma	[cheetah / cheetahs]
chui / chui	[leopard / leopards]
kondoo / kondoo	[sheep / sheep]
punda milia / punda milia	[zebra / zebras]
panya / panya	[rat / rats]

## D). Ndege [birds]

kuku/kuku	[hen / hens]
kasuku/kasuku	[parrot / parrots]
tai/tai	[eagle / eagles]
bata mzinga/bata mzinga	[turkey / turkeys]
mwewe / mwewe	[kite / kites]
kunguru / kunguru	[crow / crows]
kipanga / vipanga	[hawk / hawks]
dudumizi / dudumizi	[coucal / coucals]
mbuni / mbuni	[ostrich / ostriches]
kurumbiza / kurumbiza	[robin / robins]
bata / bata	[duck / ducks]
shakwe / shakwe	[gull / gulls]
sigi / sigi	[small, brown, shortailed bird(s)]
pugi / pugi	[dove / doves]
njiwa / njiwa	[pigeon / pigeons]
kanga / kanga	[guinea fowl / guinea fowls]
koho / koho	[osprey / ospreys]
korongo / korongo	[stork / storks / crane / cranes ]
kitaroharo / vitaroharo	[shikra / shikras]
furukombe / furukombe	[African fish eagle / African fish eagles]
mnandi / minandi	[cormorant / cormorants]
kengewa / kengewa	[African kite / African kites]
mbayuwayu /mbayuwayu	[swallow / swallows]

batabukini / batabukini  
batamwitu / batamwitu

[Madagascar turkey / Madagascar turkeys]  
[wild turkey / wild turkey]

## E). Wadudu [insects]

nyuki/nyuki	[bee/bees]
mbu/mbu	[mosquito/mosquitoes]
nzi/nzi	[fly/flies]
nyigu/nyigu	[wasp/wasps]
duduvule/maduduvule	[carpenter bee / carpenter bees]
buibui/buibui	[spider / spiders]
kunguni/kunguni	[bedbug / bedbugs]
mbung'o/mbung'o	[tsetse fly / tsetse flies]
kiroboto/viroboto	[flea / fleas]
kupe / kupe	[tick / ticks]
vunjajungu/vunjajungu	[praying mantis / praying mantises]
mchwa/mchwa	[termite / termites]
kumbikumbi/kumbikumbi	[flying ant / flying ants]
nyenze/nyenze	[cricket / crickets]
chawa/chawa	[louse / lice]
nzige/nzige	[locust / locusts]
kipepeo/vipepeo	[butterfly / butterflies]
nondo/nondo	[moth / moths]
sisimizi/sisimizi	[small black ant / small black ants]
nge/nge	[scorpion / scorpions]

## F). Samaki [fish]

ngege/ngege	[tilapia/tilapia]
papa/papa	[shark/sharks]
nyangumi/nyangumi	[whale/whales]
dagaa/dagaa	[sardine/sardines]
ngisi/ngisi	[cuttlefish/cuttlefish]
mkunga/mikunga	[eel/eels]
kamongo/kamongo	[gilled lungfish / gilled lungfish]
pomboo/pomboo	[dolphin / dolphins]
pweza / pweza	[squid / squids]
kambare / kambare	[catfish / catfish]
nguru / nguru	[kingfish / kingfish]
changu / changu	[snapper / snappers]
chuchunge / chuchunge	[swordfish / swordfish]
sangara / sangara	[Nile perch / Nile perch]

pono / pono

[parrot fish / parrot fish]

### Zingatia [Note]

When using a verb, this noun class uses **A-** in singular and **WA-** in plural for sentence formation.

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. <b>M</b> wanafunzi <b>a</b> nasoma. | [The student is reading.]          |
| <b>W</b> anafunzi <b>w</b> anasoma.    | [The students are reading.]        |
| 2. <b>M</b> walimu <b>a</b> naimba.    | [The teacher is singing.]          |
| <b>W</b> alimu <b>w</b> anaimba.       | [The teachers are singing.]        |
| 3. Rafiki <b>a</b> likuja nyumbani.    | [The friend came home.]            |
| Rafiki <b>w</b> alikuja nyumbani.      | [The friends came home.]           |
| 4. Mama <b>a</b> napika kuku.          | [The mother is cooking chicken.]   |
| Mama <b>w</b> anapika kuku.            | [The mothers are cooking chicken.] |

# Lesson 9b:

## Noun Classes

### KI - VI

M - WA	[A - WA]
<b>KI - VI</b>	<b>[KI - VI]</b>
M - MI	[U - I]
JI - MA	[LI - YA]
N - N	[I - ZI]
U - U	[U - ZI]
U - U	[U - U]
KU - KU	[KU - KU]
PA - PA	[PA - PA]
MU - MU	[MU - MU]

### KI - VI [KI - VI]

This noun class has the following nouns:

- A).** nouns that take **KI-** in singular and **VI-** in plural
- B).** nouns that take **CH-** in singular and **VY-** in plural
- C).** body parts [sehemu za mwili]
- D).** names of languages [majina ya lugha]
- E).** Diminutives [hali ya udogo]
- F).** words that take **KI-** in both singular and plural
- G).** words that take **VI-** in both singular and plural



## A). Nouns that take **KI-** in singular and **VI-** in plural

kiti/viti	[chair/chairs]
kitabu/vitabu	[book/books]
kiatu/viatu	[shoe/shoes]
kisu/visu	[knife/knives]
kikombe/vikombe	[cup/cups]
kilima/vilima	[hill/hills]
kisiwa/visiwa	[island/islands]
kiazi/viazi	[potato/potatoes]
kitunguu/vitunguu	[onion/onions]
kitu/vitu	[thing/things]
kitanda/vitanda	[bed/beds]
kioo/vyoo	[mirror/mirrors]
kiberiti/viberiti	[match/matches]

## B). Nouns that take **CH-** in singular and **VY-** in plural

chuo/vyuo	[school/schools; college/colleges]
choo/vyoo	[restroom/restrooms]
chakula/vyakula	[food/foods]
chumba/vyumba	[room/rooms]
cheti/vyeti	[certificate/certificates]
chama/vyama	[party/parties; association/associations]
chuma/vyuma	[iron/irons]
chombo/vyombo	[container/containers; utensil/utensils]
cheo/vyeo	[rank/ranks]
chama/vyama	[society/club/group/association]
chengo/vyengo	[house / houses]

## C). Body Parts [sehemu za mwili]

kichwa/vichwa	[head/heads]
kiuno/viuno	[waist/waists]
kifua/vifua	[chest/chests]
kidole/vidole	[finger/fingers]
kisogo / visogo	[back part of the head]
kitovu / vitovu	[navel / navels]

kiwiko / viwiko	[ankle / ankles; wrist / wrists]]
kisigino / visigino	[heel / heels]
kibofu / vibofu	[bladder / bladders]

## D). Names of Languages [majina ya lugha]

Kiarabu	[Arabic]
Kifaransa	[French]
Kiingereza	[English]
Kichina	[Chinese]
Kijapani	[Japanese]
Kijerumani	[German]
Kireno	[Portuguese]

## E). Diminutives [Hali ya udogo]

kitoto / vitoto	[a little child / little children]
kijibwa / vijibwa	[a little dog / little dogs]
kibuzi / vibuzi	[a small goat / small goats]
kilima / vilima	[hill / hills]
kijitanda / vijitanda	[a small bed / small beds]
kivulana / vivulana	[a small boy / small boys]
kisichana / visichana	[a small girl / small girls]
kijiatu/vijiatu	[a small shoe/ small shoes]
kijitu/vijitu	[a small giant/small giant]
kisitu/visitu	[a small forest/small forests]
kijumba/vijumba	[a small house/small houses]
kiguu/viguu	[a small leg/ small legs]

### Zingatia [Note]

When using a verb, this noun class uses **KI-** in singular and **VI-** in plural for sentence formation.

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- Kichwa kinauma.** [The head is hurting.]  
**Vichwa vinauma.** [The heads are hurting.]

2. <b>Kiti kilivunjwa.</b>	[The chair was broken.]
<b>Viti vilivunjwa.</b>	[The chairs were broken.]
3. <b>Chuo kimefungwa.</b>	[The school has been closed.]
<b>Vyuo vimefungwa.</b>	[The schools have been closed.]
4. <b>Chakula kitapikwa.</b>	[The food will be cooked.]
<b>Vyakula vitapikwa.</b>	[The foods will be cooked.]

## F). words that take **KI-** in both singular and plural

kiu / kiu	[thirst]
kiasi / kiasi	[moderate / modicum]
kimya / kimya	[quiet]

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

1. **Kimya** chake **kilinitisha.** [His quietness scared me.]
2. **Kiu** changu **kimepungua.** [My thirst has waned / reduced.]

## G). words that take **VI-** in both singular and plural

vita / vita	[war / wars]
vifijo / vifijo	[ululation]
vitimbi / vitimbi	[drama]

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

1. **Vita viko** katika nchi ya Iraq. [There is war in Iraq]
2. Kuna **vifijo** katika Kansas Union. There are ululations at the Kansas Union.
3. Juma ana **vitimbi** vingi maishani. Juma has a lot of drama in his life.

# Lesson 9c:

## Noun Classes

### M - MI

M - WA	[A - WA]
KI - VI	[KI - VI]
<b>M - MI</b>	<b>[U - I]</b>
JI - MA	[LI - YA]
N - N	[I - ZI]
U - U	[U - ZI]
U - U	[U - U]
KU - KU	[KU - KU]
PA - PA	[PA - PA]
MU - MU	[MU - MU]

### **M – MI** [U - I]

This noun class has the following nouns:

- A). majina ya miti [names of trees]
- B). majina ya mimea [names of plants]
- C). sehemu za mwili [body parts]
- D). nouns that take **M-** in singular and **MI-** in plural
- E). radicals that start with a vowel:
  - i. nouns that take **MW-** in singular and **MI-** in plural
  - ii. particular cases: singular prefix **MU-**
- F). nouns that take **MI-** in both singular and plural

## A). Majina ya miti [names of trees]

mti/miti	[tree/trees]
mnazi/minazi	[coconut tree/coconut trees]
mchungwa/michungwa	[orange tree/orange trees]
mwembe/miembe	[mango tree/mango trees]
mtofaa/mitofaa	[apple tree/apple trees]
mpapai/mipapai	[papaya tree/papaya trees]
mndimu/mindimu	[lime tree/lime trees]
mpera/mipera	[guava tree/guava trees]
mgomba/migomba	[banana tree/banana trees]

## B). Majina ya mimea [names of plants]

mmea/mimea	[plant/plants]
------------	----------------

## C). Sehemu za mwili [body parts]

mdomo/midomo	[mouth/mouths]
mkono/mikono	[hand/hands]
mguu/miguu	[leg/legs]
mfupa/mifupa	[bone/bones]
mgongo/migongo	[back/backs]
moyo/mioyo	[heart/hearts]
mwili/miili	[body/bodies]
mfupa / mifupa	[bone / bones]

## D). Nouns that take **M-** in singular and **MI-** in plural

mfano/mifano	[example/examples]
mji/miji	[city/cities]
mkoba/mikoba	[bag/bags]
mfuko/mifuko	[bag/bags]
mlango/milango	[door/doors]
mtihani/mitihani	[exam/exams]
mjarabu/mijarabu	[test/tests]
mlima/milima	[mountain/mountains]
mpira/mipira	[ball/balls]
mkate/mikate	[bread/breads]
mto/mito	[river/rivers]

mchezo/michezo	[game/games]
moto/mioto	[fire/fires]
mskiti/misikiti	[mosque/mosques]
msitu/misitu	[forest/forests]
mswaki/miswaki	[toothbrush/toothbrushes]
mto/mito	[river/rivers, pillow/pillows]

## E). Radicals that start with a vowel:

### i. nouns that take **MW-** in singular and **MI-** in plural

mwaka/miaka	[year/years]
mwavuli/miavuli	[umbrella/umbrellas]
mwezi/miezi	[month/months]
mwiba/miiba	[thorn/thorns]
mwisho/miisho	[end/ ends]

### ii. particular cases: singular prefix **MU-**

muhindi/mihindi	[corn]
muhogo/mihogo	[cassava/cassavas]
muwa/miwa	[sugarcane]

## Zingatia [Note]

When using a verb, this noun class uses **U-** in singular and **I-** in plural for sentence formation.

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

1. <b>Mti</b> <b>u</b> lianguka.	[The tree fell.]
<b>Miti</b> <b>i</b> lianguka.	[The trees fell.]
2. <b>Mkono</b> <b>u</b> nauma.	[The hand hurts.]
<b>Mikono</b> <b>i</b> nauma.	[The hands hurt.]
3. <b>Mkoba</b> <b>u</b> meoshwa.	[The bag has been washed.]
<b>Mikoba</b> <b>i</b> meoshwa.	[The bags have been washed.]

## D). Nouns that take **MI-** in singular and plural

mizani / mizani	[weight / weights]
miwani / miwani	[glass / glasses; syllable / syllables]
miraa / miraa	[Khat (a stimulant plant)]

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <b>Miwani imeanguka.</b> | [The glass has fallen.]    |
| <b>Miwani imeanguka.</b>    | [The glasses have fallen.] |
| 2. <b>Miraa imefika.</b>    | [The khat has arrived.]    |
| <b>Miraa imefika.</b>       | [The khat has arrived.]    |

# Lesson 9d:

## Noun Classes

### JI – MA

M - WA	[A - WA]
KI - VI	[KI - VI]
M - MI	[U - I]
<b>JI - MA</b>	<b>[LI - YA]</b>
N - N	[I - ZI]
U - U	[U - ZI]
U - U	[U - U]
KU - KU	[KU - KU]
PA - PA	[PA - PA]
MU - MU	[MU - MU]

#### JI - MA [LI - YA]

Nouns in this class can start with any letter in their singular form but their plural forms must take **MA-**.

This noun class has the following nouns:

- A).** manufactured products, natural or built places, abstract or concrete concepts
- B).** sehemu za mwili [parts of the body]
- C).** matunda na vitu vya kawaida [fruits and natural objects]
- D).** majina ya vitu ambavyo havihesabiki [These nouns exist only in the plural form and are things which cannot be counted. They take **MA-** in both singular and plural form]
- E).** majina ya ukubwa [augmentatives]
- F).** majina ya vitu visiyobadilika katika umoja na wingi [Nouns that do not change in plural or singular forms. In sentence formation they take **LI-** in both singular and plural forms.]



## A). Manufactured products, natural or built places, abstract or concrete concepts

### **Manufactured products:**

blanketi/mablanketi	[blanket/blankets]
dirisha/madirisha	[window/windows]
gari/magari	[car/cars]
gazeti/magazeti	[newspaper/newspapers]
godoro/magodoro	[mattress/mattresses]
sanduku/masanduku	[box/boxes]
jiko/meke	[gas cooker/gas cookers]
dawati/madawati	[desk/desks]

### **Natural or Built places:**

baraza/mabaraza	[veranda/verandas]
daraja/madaraja	[bridge/bridges]
duka/maduka	[shop/shops]
shamba/mashamba	[farm/farms]
soko/masoko	[market/markets]
ziwa/maziwa	[lake/lakes]
jimbo/majimbo	[state/states]

### **Abstract or Concrete concepts:**

jina/majina	[name/names]
kosa/makosa	[mistake/mistakes]
nenno/maneno	[word/words]
jambo/mambo	[issue/issues]
jiwe/mawe	[stone/stones]
somo/masomo	[subject/subjects; lesson/lessons]
wazo/mawazo	[thought/thoughts]
jibu/majibu	[answer/answers]
swali/maswali	[question/questions]
jukumu/majukumu	[responsibility/responsibilities]
juma/majuma	[week/weeks]

## B). Sehemu za mwili [parts of the body]

jicho/macho	[eye/eyes]
jino/meno	[tooth/teeth]
bega/mabega	[shoulder/shoulders]
goti/magoti	[knee/knees]
sikio/masikio	[ear/ears]
tumbo/matumbo	[stomach/bowels]
paja/mapaja	[thigh/thighs]

## C). Matunda na vitu vya kawaida [fruits and natural objects]

### Fruits:

chungwa/machungwa	[orange/oranges]
embe/maembe	[mango/mangoes]
limau/malimau	[lemon/lemons]
nanasi/mananasi	[pineapple/pineapples]
papai/mapapai	[pawpaw/pawpaws]
dafu/madafu	[coconut/coconuts (with milk)]
tofaa/matofaa	[apple/apples]
tunda / matunda	[fruit / fruits]

### Natural Objects:

jani/majani	[leaf/leaves]
yai/mayai	[egg/eggs]
rinda/marinda	[dress/dresses]

## D). Majina ya vitu ambavyo havihesabiki [nouns of things that cannot be counted, which exist only in the plural form]

maji/maji	[water]
mafuta/mafuta	[oil]
maharagwe/maharagwe	[beans]
mahindi/mahindi	[corn]
mali/mali	[wealth]

maafa/maafa	[misfortune]
matata/matata	[problems]
mazingira/mazingira	[environment]
makala/makala	[articles]
maskani/maskani	[residence]
mate/mate	[saliva]
marashi/marashi	[cologne]
mazungumzo/mazungumzo	[conversation]
maadili/maadili	[morality]
maarifa/maarifa	[knowledge]
mamlaka/mamlaka	[power/authority]
mahaba/mahaba	[love]
malazi/malazi	[beddings]

## E). majina ya ukubwa [augmentatives]

lango/malango	[big door/ big doors]
toto/matoto	[big child/ big children]
jibwa/majibwa	[big dog/ big dogs]
gombe/magombe	[big cow/ big cows]
jitu/majitu	[giant/giants]
dizi/madizi	[big banana/ big bananas]
guu/maguu	[big leg/ big legs]
fupa/mafupa	[big bone/ big bones]
jike/majike	[big woman/ big women]
nguo/guo	[big cloth/ big clothes]
nguruwe/guruwe	[big pig/big pigs]
ndovu/dovu	[big elephant/ big elephants]
ndege/dege	[big bird/ big birds]
ndizi/dizi	[big banana/ big bananas]
njia/jia	[big road/ big roads]
mbuzi/buzi	[big goat/ big goats]
mlima/lima	[big mountain/ big mountains]
mkoba/koba	[big bag/ big bags]
mkono/kono	[big hand/ big hands]
chumba/jumba	[big room/ big rooms]
uso/juso	[big face/ big faces]
kichwa/jichwa	[big head/ big heads]
kisu/jisu	[big knife/ big knives]
kiatu/jiatu	[big shoe/ big shoes]
kikombe/jikombe	[big cup/ big cups]
kidole/jidole	[big finger/ big fingers]

F). majina ya vitu visiyobadilika katika umoja na wingi [Nouns that do not change in plural or singular forms. In sentence formation this class takes **LI-** in both singular and plural.]

giza/giza	[darkness]
jua/jua	[sun]
joto/joto	[heat/warmth]
jasho/jasho	[sweat]
gubu/gubu	[commotion]
gugumo/gugumo	[body odor]
lepe/lepe	[drowsiness]

### Zingatia [Note]

When using a verb, this noun class uses **LI-** in singular and **YA-** in plural for sentence formation.

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

1. Chungwa <b>limenunuliwa</b> .	[The orange has been bought.]
<b>Machungwa yamenunuliwa</b> .	[The oranges have been bought.]
2. Gari <b>limefika</b> .	[The car has arrived.]
<b>Magari yamefika</b> .	[The cars have arrived.]
3. <b>Jicho linauma</b> .	[The eye hurts.]
<b>Macho yanauma</b> .	[The eyes hurt.]
4. <b>Maji yamemwangika</b> .	[The water has been poured.]
<b>Maji yamemwangika</b> .	[The water has been poured.]
5. <b>Mazingira yanapendeza</b> .	[The environment is attractive.]
<b>Mazingira yanapendeza</b> .	[The environment is attractive.]
6. <b>Mafuta yatanunuliwa kesho</b> .	[Oil will be bought tomorrow.]
<b>Mafuta yatanunuliwa kesho</b> .	[Oil will be bought tomorrow.]

7. Goti langu <b>limeumia</b> .	[My knee has been hurt.]
<b>Magoti</b> yangu <b>yameumia</b> .	[My knees have been hurt.]
8. Toto langu <b>linalala</b> .	[My child is sleeping.]
<b>Matoto</b> yangu <b>yanalala</b> .	[My children are sleeping.]
9. Giza <b>limeingia</b> .	[Darkness has set in.]
Giza <b>limeingia</b> .	[Darkness has set in.]
10. Jua <b>limetua</b> .	[The sun has set.]
Jua <b>limetua</b> .	[The sun has set.]
11. Jasho <b>linatoka</b> .	[The sweat is coming out.]
Jasho <b>linatoka</b> .	[The sweat is coming out.]

# Lesson 9e:

## Noun Classes

### N - N

M - WA	[A - WA]
KI - VI	[KI - VI]
M - MI	[U - I]
JI - MA	[LI - YA]
<b>N - N</b>	<b>[I - ZI]</b>
U - U	[U - ZI]
U - U	[U - U]
KU - KU	[KU - KU]
PA - PA	[PA - PA]
MU - MU	[MU - MU]

### N - N [I - ZI]

This noun class is the broadest noun class and has the following nouns:

- A).** Manufactured products, natural or built places, abstract or concrete concepts
- B).** Foods, fruits, and vegetables

The N-N noun class has many noun words borrowed from English. It contains some nouns which start with the prefix **N-** although several nouns in this class do not. These nouns are written identically in singular and plural forms.

## A). Manufactured products, natural or built places, abstract or concrete concepts

### **Manufactured objects:**

barua/barua	[letter/letters]
chupa/chupa	[bottle/bottles]
dawa/dawa	[drug/drugs; medicine/medicines]
kalamu/kalamu	[pen/pens]
karatasi/karatasi	[paper/papers]
ngoma/ngoma	[drum/drums]
sabuni/sabuni	[soap/soaps]
sahani/sahani	[plate/plates]
sufuria/sufuria	[pan/pans]
suruali/suruali	[trouser/trousers]
chaki/chaki	[chalk/chalk]
dola/dola	[dollar/dollars]
kompyuta/kompyuta	[computer/computers]
nguo/nguo	[cloth/cloths]
soksi/soksi	[sock/socks]
shilingi/shilingi	[shilling/shillings]
meza/meza	[table/tables]
taa/taa	[light/lights]
senti/senti	[cent/cents]
nyumba/nyumba	[house/houses]
sakafu/sakafu	[floor/floors]
karata/karata	[card/cards]
shule/shule	[school/schools]
kofia/kofia	[hat/hats]
redio/redio	[radio/radios]
hospitali/hospitali	[hospital/hospitals]
picha/picha	[picture/pictures]
pesa/pesa	[money]
motokaa/motokaa	[car/car]
sufuria/sufuria	[cooking pot/cooking pots]

### **Nature:**

ardhi/ardhi	[earth; ground]
bahari/bahari	[sea]
baridi/baridi	[cold]

barafu/barafu	[ice]
hewa/hewa	[air; atmosphere]
nuru/nuru	[light]
mvua/mvua	[rain]
njia/njia	[way]
bandari/bandari	[harbor]
barabara/barabara	[road]
nchi/nchi	[country]
damu/damu	[blood]
siku/siku	[day/days]

### **Abstract concepts:**

ajali/ajali	[accident/accidents]
bahati/bahati	[luck/lucks]
furaha/furaha	[joy/joys]
hasara/hasara	[loss/losses]
hatari/hatari	[danger/dangers]
huzuni/huzuni	[sadness]
nguvu/nguvu	[strength/strengths]
shida/shida	[problem/problems]
thamani/thamani	[value/values]
dakika/dakika	[minute/minutes]
sifa/sifa	[praise/praises; reputation/reputations]
ndoto/ndoto	[dream/dreams]
shughuli/shughuli	[business/businesses]
huruma/huruma	[mercy/mercies]
harufu/harufu	[smell/smells]

## **B). Foods, fruits, and vegetables**

chai/chai	[tea/teas]
chumvi/chumvi	[salt/salts]
kahawa/kahawa	[coffee/coffees]
mboga/mboga	[vegetable/vegetables]
nazi/nazi	[coconut/coconuts]
ndizi/ndizi	[banana/bananas]
nyama/nyama	[meat/meats]
pilipili/pilipili	[pepper/peppers]
siagi/siagi	[butter; margarine]



sukari/sukari	[sugar/sugars]
njugu/njugu	[peanut/peanuts]

### Zingatia [Note]

When using a verb, this noun class uses **I-** in singular and **ZI-** in plural for sentence formation.

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

1. Kalamu <b>ime</b> anguka.	[The pen has fallen.]
Kalamu <b>zime</b> anguka.	[The pens have fallen.]
2. Njia <b>ime</b> fungwa.	[The way has been closed.]
Njia <b>zime</b> fungwa.	[The ways have been closed.]
3. Sahani <b>ili</b> potea.	[The plate got lost.]
Sahani <b>zili</b> potea.	[The plates got lost.]

# Lesson 9f:

## Noun Classes

### U - U

M - WA	[A - WA]
KI - VI	[KI - VI]
M - MI	[U - I]
JI - MA	[LI - YA]
N - N	[I - ZI]
<b>U - U</b>	<b>[U - ZI]</b>
<b>U - U</b>	<b>[U - U]</b>
KU - KU	[KU - KU]
PA - PA	[PA - PA]
MU - MU	[MU - MU]

<b>U - U</b>	<b>[U - ZI]</b>
<b>U - U</b>	<b>[U - U]</b>

This noun class has the following nouns:

- A).** concrete nouns with various plurals
- B).** uncountable nouns, with no plural form
- C).** nouns that are mostly formed from adjectives, nominals, or verbal roots
- D).** names of countries

## A). Concrete nouns with various plurals

### U - NY:

uso/nyuso	[face/faces]
uzi/nyuzi	[thread/threads]
ua/nyua	[courtyard/courtyards]
ufa/nyufa	[crack/cracks]
uma/nyuma	[fork/forks]

### U - ND:

ulimi/ndimi	[tongue/tongues]
udevu/ndevu	[beard/beards]

### U - MB:

ubao/mbao	[board/boards]
ubavu/mbavu	[rib/ribs]
ubawa/mbawa	[wing/wings]

### U - Ø:

unywele/nywele	[one hair/hair]
ufunguo/funguo	[key/keys]
ukuta/kuta	[wall/walls]
upande/pande	[side/sides]
uvumbi/vumbi	[grain of dust/dust]
upanga/panga	[machete/machetes]
upepo/pepo	[wind/winds]

### W - NY:

wakati/nyakati	[time/times]
wembe/nyembe	[razor blade/razor blades]
wimbo/nyimbo	[song/songs]

## B). Uncountable nouns, with no plural form

Nouns in this category remain the same in both singular and plural sentence formation when using a verb(s).

udongo/udongo	[soil; ground]
ugali/ugali	[corn paste]
uji/uji	[porridge]

ulimwengu/ulimwengu	[world]
umeme/umeme	[electricity]
umri/umri	[age]
unga/unga	[flour]
usingizi/usingizi	[sleep]
uwongo/uwongo	[a lie]
ubwabwa/ubwabwa	[rice gruel porridge]
uyoga/uyoga	[mushroom/mushrooms]
ufuta/ufuta	[sesame seed/sesame seeds]
ukungu/ukungu	[fog/mist/dampness]
ulimbi/ulimbi	[glue/glues]
ushuru/ushuru	[tax/taxes]
UKIMWI/UKIMWI	[AIDS]
uboho/uboho	[brain/bone marrow]
usaha/usaha	[pus]

## C). Nouns that are mostly formed from adjectives, nominals, or verbal roots

Nouns in this category remain the same in both singular and plural sentence formation when using a verb(s).

<b>Nominal roots:</b>	<b>NOUN - NOUN</b>
jamaa - ujamaa	[group of people - community]
kijana - ujana	[young person - young age]
mzee - uzee	[old person - old age]
maskini - umaskini	[poor person - poverty]
mchawi - uchawi	[witch - witchcraft]
mfalme - ufalme	[king - kingdom]
mtoto - utoto	[child - childhood]
<b>Verbal roots:</b>	<b>VERB - NOUN</b>
kuiba - uwizi	[to steal - theft]
kukosa - ukosefu	[to miss - deficiency]
kupenda - upendo	[to love - love]
kuweza - uwezo	[to be able - capacity]
kusahau - usahaulifu	[to forget - forgetfulness]

<b>Mifano zaidi</b>	
ulafi	[greediness]
uhodari	[smartness]
ubaya	[badness]
umoja	[unity]
uchoyo	[meanness]
ubora	[goodness]
wizi	[theft]
ufundi	[expertise]
wema	[kindness]
urafiki	[friendship]

<b>D). Names of countries</b>	
Ufaransa	[France]
Uganda	[Uganda]
Uingereza	[England]
Ujerumani	[Germany]
Ureno	[Portugal]
Urusi	[Russia]

<b>Zingatia [Note]</b>
When using a verb, this noun class uses <b>U-</b> in singular and <b>ZI-</b> in plural for sentence formation. However, uncountable nouns and nouns that are formed from adjectival, nominal, or verbal roots only use <b>U-</b> .

<b>Sentence Formation</b>	
Mifano:	
1. <b>Ulimi unauma.</b>	[The tongue hurts.]
<b>Ndimi zinauma.</b>	[The tongues hurt.]
2. <b>Ufunguo umepotea.</b>	[The key has been lost.]
<b>Funguo zimepotea.</b>	[The keys have been lost.]
3. <b>Ubavu umevunjika.</b>	[The rib has broken.]
<b>Mbavu zimevunjika.</b>	[The ribs have broken.]
4. <b>Ugali umepikwa.</b>	[The cornmeal has been cooked.]
<b>Ugali umepikwa.</b>	[The cornmeal has been cooked.]

5. **Upendo wao **u**mesifika.** [Their love has been praised.]

**Upendo wao **u**mesifika.** [Their love has been praised.]

# Lesson 10:

## Family

**Family** [jamaa; familia]

### A). Family

babu	[grandfather]
babu mkubwa; babumkuu	[elder grandfather]
nyanya; bibi	[grandmother]
nyanyamkuu; bibimkuu; nyanya mkubwa	[elder grandmother]
mzazi	[parent]
baba	[father]
baba mkubwa; babamkuu	[elder uncle (father's elder brother)]
baba mdogo	[younger uncle (father's younger brother)]
baba wa kambo	[stepfather]
mama	[mother]
mama mkubwa; mamamkuu	[elder auntie (mother's elder sister)]
mama mdogo	[younger auntie (mother's younger sister)]
mama wa kambo	[stepmother]
mke; bibi	[wife]
mume	[husband]
mtoto/mwana	[child]
kaka	[elder brother; male sibling]
dada	[elder sister; female sibling]
ndugu	[brother; sister; citizen; comrade; friend; fellow tribesman; conational]
mzee	[elder]
Mjomba; ami	[uncle in general (usually paternal uncle)]
shangazi; mbiomba	[maternal aunt]
mpwa	[nephew]
binamu	[cousin]
binti	[daughter of]
bin	[son of]
mvulana	[boy]

msichana	[girl]
kijana	[youth; young man; teenager]
familia	[family]
mkwe	[an in-law]
mama mkwe; mavyaa	[mother-in-law]
baba mkwe; bavyaa	[father-in-law]
mkaza; mkaza mwana	[daughter-in-law]
shemeji; mwamu	[sister-in-law; brother-in-law; relative by marriage]
wifi	[sister-in-law (brother's wife or husband's sister)]
mwanamke	[woman]
mwanamume	[man]
kifungua mimba	[first born child]
kitinda mimba; kifunga mimba	[last born child]
mjukuu	[grandchild]
kitukuu	[great grandchild (2 <sup>nd</sup> generation)]
kinying'inya	[great, great grandchild (3 <sup>rd</sup> generation)]
kilembwe	[great, great, great grandchild (4 <sup>th</sup> generation)]
kilembwekeza	[great, great, great, great grandchild (5 <sup>th</sup> generation)]
kitojo	[great, great, great, great, great grandchild (6 <sup>th</sup> gen.)]
ami	[paternal uncle]
mwanyumba	[different men who have married blood sisters call each other mwanyumba]
wakewenza	[co-wives]

Zingatia [Note]	
mkubwa; mkuu	[bigger/elder/older]
mdogo	[smaller/younger/little]
na	[have]
nina	[I have]
sina	[I do not have]
angu	[my]
lakini	[but]
pekee	[only]
tu	[only/just]
penda	[like]
ngapi	[how many]



## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Una kaka?

[Do you have a brother?]

a). Ndiyo, nina kaka.

[Yes, I have a brother.]

b). La, sina kaka.

[No, I do not have a brother.]

c). La, sina kaka lakini nina dada.

[No, I do not have a brother but I have a sister.]

### 2. Kaka yako anaitwa nani? | Yeye anaitwa nani?

[What is your brother's name?] [What is his name?]

Kaka yangu anaitwa John. / Yeye anaitwa John.

[My brother's name is John. / His name is John.]

## Additional Questions

### 3. Kaka yako anasoma nini?

Kaka yangu anasoma siasa.

(Yeye) Anasoma elimu ya siasa.

### [What does your brother study?]

[My brother studies political science.]

[He studies political science.]

### 4. Anaishi wapi?

Anaishi katika jimbo la New York.

### [Where does he live?]

[He lives in New York.]

### 5. Kaka yako anaishi wapi?

Kaka yangu anaishi katika jimbo la New York.

### Where does your brother live?

[My brother lives in New York.]

### 6. Ana miaka mingapi?

Ana miaka ishirini na minane.

### [How old is he?]

[He is 28 years old.]

### 7. Kaka yako ana miaka mingapi?

Kaka yangu ana miaka ishirini na minane.

### [How old is your brother?]

[My brother is 28 years old.]

### 8. Anapenda chakula gani?

Anapenda mchicha na jibini.

### [What food does he like?]

[He likes spinach and cheese.]

### 9. Kaka yako anasema lugha gani?

Kaka yangu anasema \_\_\_\_\_.

### [What language does your brother speak?]

[My brother speaks \_\_\_\_\_.]

<b>10. Kaka yako anasoma wapi?</b>	<b>[Where does your brother study/go to school?]</b>
Kaka yangu anasoma _____.	[My brother studies at _____.]
<b>11. Kaka yako anapenda chakula gani?</b>	<b>[What food does your brother like?]</b>
Anapenda _____.	[He likes _____.]
<b>12. Una kaka/dada wangapi?</b>	<b>[How many brothers/sisters do you have?]</b>
a). Nina kaka moja na dada wawili/watatu/wane/watano/ sita.	[I have one brother and two sisters/three sister/ four sisters/five sisters/ six sisters.]
b). Mimi ni mtoto wa pekee.	[I am an only child.]
c). Mimi ni kifungua mimba na kifunga mimba.	[I am the first and last born.]
d). Sina kaka, sina dada.	[I have no brother or sister.]

# Lesson 11:

## The Verb -NA

### -NA [have]

The verb “have” is constructed when a **subject prefix** is added to **-NA**.

- A). The Verb **-NA** in Present Tense
- B). The Verb **-NA** in Past Tense
- C). The Verb **-NA** in Future Tense

### A). The Verb -NA in Present Tense

Subject Prefix	Subject Prefix + -NA	Meaning
<i>1<sup>st</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>MIMI NI-</b>	<b>Nina</b>	I have
<b>SISI TU-</b>	<b>Tuna</b>	We have
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>WEWE U-</b>	<b>Una</b>	You have
<b>NYINYI M-</b>	<b>Mna</b>	You (pl.) have
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>YEYE A-</b>	<b>Ana</b>	He/She has
<b>WAO WA-</b>	<b>Wana</b>	They have

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>1.</b> Mimi nina kalamu.  | [I have a pen.]          |
| Sisi tuna kalamu.            | [We have pens.]          |
| <b>2.</b> Wewe una karatasi. | [You have paper.]        |
| Nyinyi mna karatasi.         | [You (pl.) have paper.]  |
| <b>3.</b> Yeye ana rula.     | [He/She has a ruler.]    |
| Wao wana rula.               | [They have rulers.]      |
| <b>4.</b> Mimi nina kitabu.  | [I have a book.]         |
| Sisi tuna vitabu.            | [We have a book.]        |
| <b>5.</b> Wewe una rafiki.   | [You have a friend.]     |
| Nyinyi mna rafiki.           | [You (pl) have friends.] |

## B). The Verb -NA in Past Tense

Subject Prefix		Subject Prefix + -LIKUWA NA	Meaning
<i>1<sup>st</sup> Person:</i>			
<b>MIMI</b>	<b>NI-</b>	<b>Nilikuwa na</b>	I had
<b>SISI</b>	<b>TU-</b>	<b>Tulikuwa na</b>	We had
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> Person:</i>			
<b>WEWE</b>	<b>U-</b>	<b>Ulikuwa na</b>	You had
<b>NYINYI</b>	<b>M-</b>	<b>Mlikuwa na</b>	You (pl.) had
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> Person:</i>			
<b>YEYE</b>	<b>A-</b>	<b>Alikuwa na</b>	He/She had
<b>WAO</b>	<b>WA-</b>	<b>Walikuwa na</b>	They had

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| <b>1.</b> Mimi nilikuwa na gari.            | [I had a car.]             |
| Sisi tulikuwa na magari.                    | [We had cars.]             |
| <b>2.</b> Wewe ulikuwa na daftari.          | [You had a notebook.]      |
| Nyinyi mlikuwa na madaftari.                | [You (pl.) had notebooks.] |
| <b>3.</b> Yeye alikuwa na kazi ya nyumbani. | [He/She had homework.]     |
| Wao walikuwa na kazi ya nyumbani.           | [They had homework.]       |
| <b>4.</b> Mimi nilikuwa na kitabu           | [I had a book.]            |
| Sisi tulikuwa na vitabu.                    | [We had books.]            |
| <b>5.</b> Wewe ulikuwa na rafiki.           | [You had a friend.]        |
| Nyinyi mlikuwa na rafiki.                   | [You (pl.) had friends.]   |

## C). The Verb -NA in Future Tense

Subject Prefix	Subject Prefix + -TAKUWA NA	Meaning
<i>1<sup>st</sup> Person:</i> <b>MIMI</b> <b>NI-</b> <b>SISI</b> <b>TU-</b>	<b>Nitakuwa na</b> <b>Tutakuwa na</b>	I will have We will have
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> Person:</i> <b>WEWE</b> <b>U-</b> <b>NYINYI</b> <b>M-</b>	<b>Utakuwa na</b> <b>Mtakuwa na</b>	You will have You (pl.) will have
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> Person:</i> <b>YEYE</b> <b>A-</b> <b>WAO</b> <b>WA-</b>	<b>Atakuwa na</b> <b>Watakuwa na</b>	He/She will have They will have

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>1.</b> Mimi nitakuwa na kazi.   | [I will have work.]                    |
| Sisi tutakuwa na kazi.             | [We will have work.]                   |
| <b>2.</b> Wewe utakuwa na msaada.  | [You will have help/assistance.]       |
| Nyinyi mtakuwa na msaada.          | [You (pl.) will have help/assistance.] |
| <b>3.</b> Yeye atakuwa na mbwa.    | [He/She will have a dog.]              |
| Wao watakuwa na mbwa.              | [They will have dogs.]                 |
| <b>4.</b> Mimi nitakuwa na kitabu. | [I will have a book.]                  |
| Sisi tutakuwa na vitabu.           | [We will have books.]                  |
| <b>5.</b> Wewe utakuwa na rafiki.  | [You will have a friend.]              |
| Nyinyi mtakuwa na rafiki.          | [You (pl) will have friends.]          |

# Lesson 12a:

## Various Personalities

### Various Personalities [watu mbalimbali]

#### A). Various Personalities

daktari	[doctor]
daktari wa meno	[dentist]
daktari wa macho	[optician; eye specialist]
nesi	[nurse]
mkunga	[midwife; nurse]
dereva	[driver]
kipofu	[blind person]
kibogoyo	[toothless person]
mjamzito	[pregnant woman]
chongo	[a squint]
mwendawazimu; kichaa	[mad person]
kiguru	[disabled person (leg)]
kibyongo	[hunchback]
kiziwi	[deaf person]
bubu	[dumb person]
mwizi	[thief]
jambazi	[robber]
dobi	[launder]
hakimu	[judge]
kadhi	[Islamic judge]
wakili; mwanasheria	[lawyer]
mshtakiwa	[accused person]
mtetezi	[defendant]
shahidi / mashahidi	[witness / witnesses]
karani	[clerk]
kinyozi	[barber]
mfanyibiashara	[businessman]
mchongaji	[sculptor]
mfinyanzi	[potter]
mchungaji	[shepherd]
mjane	[widow]
mfugaji	[livestock farmer]

mhunzi	[blacksmith]
mjenzi	[construction worker]
mkalimani	[interpreter]
mkulima	[farmer]
mnajimu	[astrologist]
mpishi	[cook]
mshairi	[poet]
mtafiti	[researcher]
mvuvi	[fisherman]
mwaguzi	[dream interpreter]
mwalimu	[teacher]
mhadhiri	[lecturer; instructor]
ustadh; ustadhi	[professor]
profesa	[professor]
padre; kasisi	[clergy]
sheha	[imam (Islamic leader)]
mpelelezi; jasusi	[spy; detective; investigator]
ofisa wa polisi; askari; polisi	[police officer]
mekanika	[mechanic]
nahodha	[sea captain]
nahodha wa meli	[ship crewman]
mwashi	[mason]
rubani	[pilot]
seremala	[carpenter]
sonara	[jeweler]
mchimba madini	[miner]
tabibu	[healer; physician]
mchuuzi	[retailer]
mfanyakazi; mtumishi	[worker]
mhandisi	[engineer]
mhariri	[editor]
tarishi; mjumbe	[postman; messenger]
sogora	[drummer]
msajili	[registrar]
msusi	[hairbraider; beautician]
msasi	[hunter]
mlanguzi	[smuggler]
mlanguzi wa madawa	[drug dealer]
mshenga	[matchmaker]
naibu	[deputy; assistant; acting officer]
baharia	[sailor]
utingo; tanboi	[luggage manager]

mbunge	[MP; Senator]
diwani	[council person]
topasi	[janitor]
saisi	[one who takes care of horses]
rais; raisi	[president]
gavana	[governor]
mwakilishi	[representative; congress person]
waziri	[minister; cabinet secretary]
waziri wa afya	[Minister/Secretary of Health]
meya	[mayor]
mfalme	[king]
malkia	[queen]
mganga	[healer; physician]
maskini; fukara	[poor person]
mwadhini	[muezzin]
jumbe	[village elder; chief; headman]
mpagazi; mchukuzi; hamali	[carrier; porter]
kiranja	[student leader]
mshona viatu	[cobbler]
dalali	[auctioneer]
jemadari	[commander in chief; chief of staff]
uledi	[cabin boy]
liwali	[administrative official; headman]
mwenyekiti	[chairman; chairperson]
katibu wa chama	[secretary of the association]
mwanachama	[member]
mwekahazina	[treasurer]
nokoa	[farm manager]
yaya	[nanny]
kuli	[dockworker]
somo	[confidante; intimate friend]
mhasibu	[accountant]
mtemakuni	[firewood fetcher]
mpigaramli	[fortune teller]
mtumishi	[servant; waiter; worker; laborer]
mkutubi	[librarian]
shaibu	[old man]
ajuza	[old woman]
kikongwe; mzee	[old person]
kingori	[young man]
mtanashati	[teenage boy]
mume; mwanamume; janadume	[man]



mwari	[young woman]
mwanamwali	[teenage girl]
mke; mwanamke; janajike	[woman]
tajiri; mkwasi	[rich person]
mchawi	[witch]
mkuu wa chuo; rais wa chuo	[university president]
mwenyekiti idara	[head of department]
mkuu wa kitivo	[dean]
ofisa wa chuo	[university official]
mpakaji rangi	[painter]
muuzaji	[salesperson]
mwongo; mlaghai	[liar]
mjinga	[stupid]
mnafiki	[pretender; liar]
mfitini	[inciter]
msaliti	[traitor]

## B). Personalities that begin with **mwana-**

Zingatia: *mwana* [child].

mwanamuziki	[musician]
mwanasayansi	[scientist]
mwanaanga	[astronaut]
mwanahewa	
mwanahisabati	[mathematician]
mwanahesabu	
mwanamitindo	[fashion designer]
mwanamichezo	[sportsman/sportswoman]
mwanasanaa	[artist]
mwanamaji	[marine]
mwanajeshi	[soldier]
mwanaisimu	[linguist]
mwanahistoria	[historian]
mwanahewa	[air force]
mwanaanga	
mwanabayolojia	[biologist]
mwanaanthropolojia	[anthropologist]
mwanasheria	[lawyer]
mwanasiasa	[politician]

## Zingatia [note]

fanya	[do]
sijui	[I do not know]
si	[is not]
sina	[I do not have]
kazi	[work/employment]
taka	[want]
inategemea	[it depends]
gani	[which]
ungependa	[you would like]
ungetaka	[you would want]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Baba/Mama/Kaka yako anafanya kazi gani?

[What work does your dad/mom/brother do?]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Yeye ni _____.                                     | [He/She is _____.]                             |
| b). Sijui.   | [I do not know.]                               |
| c). Yeye anafanya kazi ya _____.                       | [He/She does work of _____.]                   |
| d). Anafanya kazi mbalimbali/ tofauti tofauti.         | [He/She does various work/jobs.]               |
| e). Anafanya kazi za aina mbalimbali/ tofauti tofauti. | [He/She does various types of jobs/work.]      |
| f). Hana kazi.   | [He/She does not have work.]                   |
| g). Sijui anafanya kazi ya aina gani.                  | [I do not know what type of work he/she does.] |

### 2. Unafanya kazi gani?

[What work do you do?]

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| a). Mimi ni _____.           | [I am _____.]           |
| b). Ninafanya kazi ya _____. | [I do work of _____.]   |
| c). Sina kazi.               | [I do not have work.]   |
| d). Sifanyi kazi.            | [I do not work.]        |
| e). Sifanyi kazi yoyote.     | [I do not do any work.] |

### 3. Unapenda kazi gani?

[What work do you like?]

- |                              |                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| a). Ninapenda _____.         | [I like _____.] |
| b). Ninapenda kazi ya _____. | [I like _____.] |

### 4. Hupendi kazi gani?

[What work don't you like?]

- |                            |                                   |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a). Sipendi _____.         | [I don't like _____.]             |
| b). Sipendi kazi ya _____. | [I don't like the work of _____.] |

### 5. Unafanya kazi wapi?

[Where do you work?]

- |                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| a). Ninafanya kazi | [I work at the |
|--------------------|----------------|

mkahawani/maktabani/ dukani/baani/ katika duka la vitabu/bwenini.	restaurant/library/ shop(store)/bar/bookstore/dormitory.]
---	--

**6. Je, unapenda kufanya kazi mkahawani?**  
**[Do you like working at the restaurant?]**

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>a).</b> Ndiyo.   | [Yes.]   |
| <b>b).</b> La/<br>Kwa nini?<br>Sipendi kuosha sahani,<br>vikombe, na zulia. | [No.]<br>[Why?]<br>[I don't like cleaning plates, cups, and<br>carpets.] |

**7. Je, kuna kazi nyingi mkhawani?**  
**[Is there a lot of work at the restaurant?]**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a).</b> Inategemea.                             | [It depends.]                                     |
| <b>b).</b> Inategemea watu, kazi, saa,<br>siku.... | [It depends on the people, work, time,<br>day...] |
| <b>c.</b> Inategemea aina ya kazi.                 | [It depends on the kind of work/job]              |

**8. Unataka/Ungependa kufanya kazi gani baada ya shule?**  
**[What kind of work do you want/would you like to do  
after school?]**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a).</b> Ningetaka/Ningependa<br>kufanya kazi ya udaktari. | [I would want/like to work in a<br>medical profession.] |
| <b>b).</b> Ningetaka/Ningependa kuwa<br>daktari.             | [I would want/like to be a doctor.]                     |

# Lesson 12b:

## Various Professions

### Various Professions [kazi mbalimbali]

Names of professions are formed with the prefix **U-**

#### A). Various Professions

udaktari	[medicine ]
unesi	[nursing]
udereva	[driving]
ujenzi	[construction]
ukulima	[farming]
upishi	[cooking]
utafiti	[research]
uvuvi	[fishing]
ualimu	[teaching]
uprofesa	[professorship]
upadre; uhubiri	[preaching]
upelelezi	[spying]
umekanika	[auto mechanics]
uhandisi	[engineering]
ukutubi	[librarianship]
uaskari	[policing]
urubani	[piloting]
uandishi	[journalism]
useremala	[carpentry]
uakili	[law]
ususi	[cosmetology]
uhasibu	[accounting]
uhakimu	[law]
ukarani	[clerical work]
upishi	[catering]
uchuuzi	[salesmanship]
unahodha	[sailing]
ufugaji	[livestock farming]
udobi	[laundry]
ubunge	[politics]
upolisi	[security]

ugavana	[governorship]
ushairi	[poetry]
ufinyazi	[pottery]
uchongaji	[sculpting]
uhariri	[editing]
usasi	[hunting]
utumishi	[waiter]
uanajeshi	[military officer/officer]
uchoraji	[art work]

Zingatia [note]	
fanya	[do]
sijui	[I do not know]
si	[is not]
sina	[I do not have]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Baba/Mama/Kaka yako anafanya kazi gani?

**[What work does your dad/mom/brother do?]**

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| a). Yeye ni _____.                    | [He/She is _____.]                             |
| b). Sijui.                            | [I do not know.]                               |
| c). Yeye anafanya kazi ya _____.      | [He/She does work of _____.]                   |
| d). Hana kazi.                        | [He/She does not have work.]                   |
| e). Sijui anafanya kazi ya aina gani. | [I do not know what type of work he/she does.] |

### 2. Unafanya kazi gani?

**[What work do you do?]**

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| a). Mimi ni _____.           | [I am _____.]           |
| b). Ninafanya kazi ya _____. | [I do work of _____.]   |
| c). Sina kazi.               | [I do not have work.]   |
| d). Sifanyi kazi.            | [I do not work.]        |
| e). Sifanyi kazi yoyote.     | [I do not do any work.] |

# Lesson 13:

## Tenses

### Tenses [wakati/nyakati]

There are five major tenses in Swahili:

- A). Present [wakati uliopo]
- B). Present Perfect [wakati uliopo hali timilifu]
- C). Past [wakati uliopita]
- D). Future [wakati ujao]
- E). Habitual [wakati wa mazoea]

#### A). Present [wakati uliopo]

The present tense uses **-NA-**

Sentensi:

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi ni <b>na</b> soma Kiswahili. | [I am studying/reading Kiswahili.]   |
| 2. Sisi tu <b>na</b> soma Kiswahili. | [We are studying/reading Kiswahili.] |

#### B). Present Perfect [wakati uliopo hali timilifu]

The present perfect tense uses **-ME-**

Sentensi:

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi ni <b>me</b> soma Kiswahili. | [I have read/studied Kiswahili.]  |
| 2. Sisi tu <b>me</b> soma Kiswahili. | [We have read/studied Kiswahili.] |

#### C). Past [wakati uliopita]

The past tense uses **-LI-**

Sentensi:

- |                                      |                               |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi ni <b>li</b> soma Kiswahili. | [I read/studied Kiswahili.]   |
| 2. Sisi tu <b>li</b> soma Kiswahili. | [We read/ studied Kiswahili.] |



## D). Future [wakati ujao]

The future tense uses **-TA-**

Sentensi:

- |                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi nitasoma Kiswahili. | [I will read/study Kiswahili.]  |
| 2. Sisi tutasoma Kiswahili. | [We will read/study Kiswahili.] |

## E). Habitual [wakati wa mazoea]

The habitual tense uses **HU-**

If your intention is to express an idea that happens on a regular basis, use the habitual tense which is represented by the **HU-** prefix on the verb.

Sentensi:

- |   |
|---|
| 1. Mimi <u>huoga</u> kila asubuhi.<br>[I shower every morning.]                   |
| 2. Mimi <u>hupiga</u> mswaki kila asubuhi.<br>[I brush my teeth every morning.]   |
| 3. Mimi <u>hula</u> kiamsha kinywa/ chakula cha asubuhi.<br>[I eat breakfast.]    |
| 4. Mimi <u>huenda</u> darasani saa tatu asubuhi.<br>[I go to class at 9am.]       |
| 5. Mimi <u>hula</u> chakula cha mchana saa sita mchana.<br>[I eat lunch at noon.] |
| 6. Mimi <u>huenda</u> nyumbani saa kumi jioni.<br>[I go home at 4pm.]             |
| 7. Mimi <u>hucheza</u> jioni.<br>[I play in the evening.]                         |
| 8. Mimi <u>hula</u> chakula cha jioni saa moja usiku.<br>[I eat dinner at 7pm.]   |
| 9. Mimi <u>husoma</u> saa moja na nusu usiku.<br>[I study at 7:30pm.]             |

**10.** Mimi **hulala** saa nne usiku.

[I go to sleep at 10pm.]

**11.** Wanafunzi **husoma** Kiswahili kila siku.

[Students read/study Kiswahili every day.]

**12.** Yeye **huzungumza** sana.

[He/She talks a lot.]

**13.** Mwalimu **hufundisha** saa tatu asubuhi.

[The teacher teaches at 9am.]

**14.** Yeye **huimba** kila saa.

[He/She sings every hour.]

**15.** Yeye **huenda** baani kila Ijumaa.

[He/She goes to the bar every Friday.]

# Lesson 14a:

## Numbers and Counting

### Numbers and Counting [nambari na hesabu]

- A). Numbers
- B). The order in which the numbers are stated
- C). How numbers and noun class [ngeli] go together
- D). Questions with numbers (age, siblings, house, year, phone)

### A). Numbers

#### 0 - 9

sifuri	[zero]
moja	[one]
mbili	[two]
tatu	[three]
nne	[four]
tano	[five]
sita	[six]
saba	[seven]
nane	[eight]
tisa	[nine]

#### kumi (0)

kumi	[ten]
kumi na moja	[11]
kumi na mbili	[12]
kumi na tatu	[13]
kumi na nne	[14]
kumi na tano	[15]
kumi na sita	[16]
kumi na saba	[17]
kumi na nane	[18]
kumi na tisa	[19]
ishirini	[20]

thelathini	[30]
arobaini	[40]
hamsini	[50]
sitini	[60]
sabini	[70]
themanini	[80]
tisini	[90]
<b>mia (00)</b>	
mia; mia moja	[100]
mia mbili	[200]
mia tatu	[300]
mia nne	[400]
mia tano	[500]
mia sita	[600]
mia saba	[700]
mia nane	[800]
mia tisa	[900]
<b>elfu (000)</b>	
elfu; elfu moja	[1,000]
elfu mbili	[2,000]
elfu tatu	[3,000]
elfu nne	[4,000]
elfu tano	[5,000]
elfu sita	[6,000]
elfu saba	[7,000]
elfu nane	[8,000]
elfu tisa	[9,000]
laki moja; elfu mia moja	[100,000]
laki mbili; elfu mia mbili	[200,000]
laki tatu; elfu mia tatu	[300,000]
laki nne; elfu mia nne	[400,000]
laki tano; elfu mia tano	[500,000]
laki sita; elfu mia sita	[600,000]
laki saba; elfu mia saba	[700,000]
laki nane; elfu mia nane	[800,000]
laki tisa; elfu mia tisa	[900,000]
<b>milioni (000,000)</b>	
milioni; milioni moja	[1,000,000]

milioni mbili	[2,000,000]
milioni tatu	[3,000,000]
milioni nne	[4,000,000]
milioni tano	[5,000,000]
milioni sita	[6,000,000]
milioni saba	[7,000,000]
milioni nane	[8,000,000]
milioni tisa	[9,000,000]
<b>bilioni (000,000,000)</b>	
bilioni; bilioni moja	[1,000,000,000]
bilioni mbili	[2,000,000,000]
bilioni tatu	[3,000,000,000]
bilioni nne	[4,000,000,000]
bilioni tano	[5,000,000,000]
bilioni sita	[6,000,000,000]
bilioni saba	[7,000,000,000]
bilioni nane	[8,000,000,000]
bilioni tisa	[9,000,000,000]

## B). The order in which the numbers are stated

thelathini na moja	[31]
mia tatu na kumi	[310]
mia tatu, kumi na saba	[317]
elfu tatu, mia tatu kumi na saba	[3,317]
elfu mia tatu, mia tatu kumi na saba	[300,317]
milioni tatu, elfu mia tatu	[3,333, 317]
thelathini na tatu, mia tatu kumi na saba	

## C). How numbers and noun class go together [numbers and noun agreements]

- Noun class is marked on numbers as in the examples below.
- When stating numbers, always start with the noun.
- Swahili numbers do take **noun agreements** except: **6, 7, 9, 10** and all the **multiples**. When stating numbers always start with the **noun**.

Mifano:

1. mwanafunzi <b>m</b> moja	[one student]
2. wanafunzi <b>w</b> awili	[two students]
3. wanafunzi <b>w</b> atatu	[three students]
4. wanafunzi <b>w</b> anne	[four students]
5. wanafunzi <b>w</b> atano	[five students]
6. wanafunzi sita	[six students]
7. wanafunzi saba	[seven students]
8. wanafunzi <b>w</b> anane	[eight students]
9. wanafunzi tisa	[nine students]
10. wanafunzi kumi	[ten students]
11. wanafunzi kumi na <b>m</b> moja	[eleven students]
12. wanafunzi kumi na <b>w</b> awili	[twelve students]

## Numbers and their agreements in various noun classes

NOUN CLASS	NOUN	MOJA	MBILI	TATU	NNE	TANO	SITA	SABA	NANE	TISA	KUMI
M	Mtoto	Mmoja	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
WA	Watoto	-----	Wawili	Watatu	Wanne	Watano	Sita	Saba	Wanane	Tisa	Kumi
KI	Kisu	Kimoja	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
VI	Visu	-----	Viwili	Vitatu	Vinne	Vitano	Sita	Saba	Vinane	Tisa	Kumi
M	Mguu	Mmoja	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
MI	Miguu	-----	Miwili	Mitatu	Minne	Mitano	Sita	Saba	Minane	Tisa	Kumi
JI	Jina	Moja	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
MA	Majina	-----	Mawili	Matatu	Matano	Matano	Sita	Saba	Manane	Tisa	Kumi
N	Nyumba	Moja	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
N	Nyumba	-----	Mbili	Tatu	Nne	Tano	Sita	Saba	Manane	Tisa	Kumi
U	Ukuta	Mmoja	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
ZI	Kuta	-----	Mbili	Tatu	Nne	Tano	Sita	Saba	Nane	Tisa	Kumi
U	Uji	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
U	Uji	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
KU	Kuimba	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
KU	Kuimba	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
PA	Pahali	Pamoja	Pawili	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
PA	Pahali	-----	-----	Patatu	Panne	Patano	Sita	Saba	Nane	Tisa	Kumi
MU	Shuleni	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
MU	Shuleni	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Mifano:

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1. mwanafunzi <b>m</b> moja             | [one student]           |
| 2. wanafunzi <b>w</b> awili             | [two students]          |
| 3. wanafunzi sita                       | [six students]          |
| 4. wanafunzi ishirini na <b>w</b> atatu | [twenty three students] |
| 5. wanafunzi thelathini                 | [thirty students]       |
| 6. kiti <b>k</b> imoja                  | [one chair]             |
| 7. viti <b>v</b> iwili                  | [two chairs]            |
| 8. viti sita                            | [six chairs]            |
| 9. viti ishirini na <b>v</b> itatu      | [twenty three chairs]   |
| 10. viti thelathini                     | [students]              |
| 11. mti <b>m</b> moja                   | [one tree]              |
| 12. miti <b>m</b> iwili                 | [two trees]             |
| 13. miti sita                           | [six trees]             |
| 14. miti ishirini na <b>m</b> itatu     | [twenty three trees]    |
| 15. miti thelathini                     | [thirty trees]          |

### Mifano zaidi:

1. walimu kumi na mmoja	[one student]
2. viti kumi na moja	[eleven chairs]
3. nyumba ishirini na mbili	[twenty two houses]
4. macho matano	[five eyes]
5. madarasa manane	[eight classes]
6. rafiki kumi na watatu	[thirteen friends]
7. pahali tisa	[nine places]
8. Nilinunua kalamu nne.	[I bought four pens.]
9. Nina paka wawili.	[I have two cats.]
10. Nina dola/shilingi tano.	[I have five dollars/shillings.]
11. Nina gari moja.	[I have one car.]
12. Nina madarasa sita/saba/ manane/tisa/kumi/etc.	[I have six/seven/eight/nine/ten classes.]
13. Nilinunua viatu viwili.	[I bought two shoes.]
14. Nina miaka mitano.	[I am five years old.]
15. Nina miaka kumi na minane/kumi na tisa/ ishirini/ ishirini na mmoja/ ishirini na miwili/ ishirini na mitatu.	[I am eighteen/nineteen/twenty/twenty one/ twenty two/ twenty three years old.]
16. Nina miaka mia moja na mmoja	[I am one hundred and one years old.]

### Zingatia [Note]

mwaka/miaka	[year/years]
-ngapi?	[how many?]
Mingapi?	[how many?]
nambari	[number]
gani	[what?]
ni	[is]
huu	[this]
wangapi?	[how many?]
simu	[telephone]
nambari ya simu	[telephone number]
mwaka	[year]
mwaka jana	[last year]
mwaka kesho/ujao	[next year]
mwaka huu/huu mwaka	[this year]



# Question Formation

Mifano:

## I. STATING NUMBERS OF SIBLINGS:

### 1. Una kaka wangapi?

[How many brothers do you have?]

a). Nina kaka mmoja na dada mmoja.

[I have one brother and one sister.]

b). Nina kaka mmoja na dada wawili.

[I have one brother and two sisters.]

c). Sina kaka lakini nina dada sita.

[I don't have brothers but I have six sisters.]

d). Sina kaka.

[I have no brother.]

e). Sina dada.

[I have no sister.]

## II. STATING YOUR AGE:

### 1. Una miaka mingapi?

[How old are you/how many years do you have?]

a). Nina miaka kumi na miwili.

[I am 12 years old.]

b). Nina miaka saba.

[I am 7 years old.]

## III. STATING YOUR HOUSE NUMBER:

### 1. Nambari yako ya nyumba ni gani?

[What is your house number?]

a). Nambari yangu ya nyumba ni \_\_\_\_\_.

[The number of my house is \_\_\_\_\_.]

b). Nambari yangu ni \_\_\_\_\_.

[My number is \_\_\_\_\_.]

c). Ni barabara ya \_\_\_\_\_.

[It is the street of \_\_\_\_\_.]

## IV. STATING YOUR TELEPHONE NUMBER

### 1. Nambari yako ya simu ni gani?

[What is your telephone number?]

a). Nambari yangu ya simu ni \_\_\_\_\_.

[My telephone number is \_\_\_\_\_.]

b). Nambari yangu ni \_\_\_\_\_.

[My number is \_\_\_\_\_.]

c). Ni \_\_\_\_\_.

[It is \_\_\_\_\_.]

## V. STATING THE YEAR:

### 1. Huu ni mwaka gani?

[Which year is this?]

- a). Huu ni mwaka wa elfu mbili kumi na moja.
- b). Ni mwaka wa elfu mbili na kumi na moja.
- c). Ni elfu mbili na kumi na moja. / Ni 2011.

[This year is 2011.]

[It is the year 2011.]

[It is 2011.]

### 2. Mwaka jana ulikuwa gani?

[Which year was last year?]

- a). Mwaka jana ulikuwa elfu mbili na kumi.
- b). Ulikuwa elfu mbili na tisa. / Ulikuwa 2010.

[Last year was 2010.]

[It was 2010.]

### 3. Mwaka ujao/kesho utakuwa gani?

[Which year will next year be?]

- a). Mwaka ujao utakuwa elfu mbili na kumi na mbili.
- b). Utakuwa elfu mbili na kumi na mbili. / Utakuwa 2012.

[Next year will be 2012.]

[It will be 2012.]

# Lesson 14b:

## Fractions

### Fractions [akisami]

#### Fractions

nusu	[half]
theluthi / thuluthi	[a third]
robo	[a quarter]
humusi	[a fifth]
sudusi / sudusu	[a sixth]
subui	[a seventh]
thumuni	[an eighth]
tusui	[a ninth]
ushuri	[a tenth]
robo tatu	[three quarters]
thuluthi mbili	[two thirds]
humusi nne	[four fifths]
subui mbili	[two sevenths]
thumuni tatu	[three eighths]
sudusi tano	[five sixths]
tusui nane	[eight ninths]
ushuri tisa	[nine tenths]
subui sita	[six sevenths]
ushuri tatu	[three tenths]
thumuni mbili	[two eighths]

#### Zingatia [Note]

asilimia	[percentage]
----------	--------------

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- 1.** Darasa la Kiswahili lina wanafunzi thuluthi mbili leo.  
[The Kiswahili class has two thirds of the students today.]
- 2.** Nitalipa ushuri tatu wa mshahara wangu wote.  
[I will pay three tenths of my whole salary.]
- 3.** Wanafunzi robo tatu wa KU ni wanawake.  
[Three quarters of the KU students are women.]
- 4.** Nusu ya idadi ya watu Marekani ni maskini.  
[Half of the American population is poor.]
- 5.** Nimekula humusi moja ya ndizi.  
[I have eaten a fifth of the banana.]

# Lesson 15:

## Days of the Week

### Days of the Week [siku za juma/wiki]

The days of the week follow the Muslim weekly pattern of worship, where Saturday is considered the first day of the week. Since Friday is the main day of worship, it is regarded as the last day of the week.

- *Jumamosi* [day one, Saturday]
- *Jumapili* [day two, Sunday]

Followed by:

- *Jumatatu* [day three, Monday]
- *Jumanne* [day four, Tuesday]
- *Jumatano* [day five, Wednesday]

And finally:

- *Alhamisi* [day six, Thursday]
- *Ijumaa* [day seven, last day of the week, Friday]

### A). Vocabulary

siku	[day]
juma; wiki	[week]
Jumatatu	[Monday]
Jumanne	[Tuesday]
Jumatano	[Wednesday]
Alhamisi	[Thursday]
Ijumaa	[Friday]
Jumamosi	[Saturday]
Jumapili	[Sunday]

## Zingatia [note]

juzi	[day before yesterday]
jana	[yesterday]
leo	[today]
kesho	[tomorrow]
kesho kutwa	[day after tomorrow]
mtondo	[three days away]
mtondogoo	[four days away]
kitondo	[five days away]
kitondo jogoo	[six days away]
majuzi	[three days ago]
juzijuzi	[four days ago]
kitojo	[five days ago]
kijomba	[six days ago]
siku	[day]
fanya	[do]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Leo ni siku gani?

[What day is today?]

- |                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a). Leo ni siku ya Jumatatu. | [Today is (the day of) Monday.] |
| b). Leo ni Jumatatu.         | [Today is Monday.]              |
| c). Ni Jumatatu.             | [It's Monday.]                  |

### 2. Jana ilikuwa siku gani?

[What day was yesterday?]

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| a). Jana ilikuwa Jumapili. | [Yesterday was Sunday.] |
| b). Ilikuwa Jumapili.      | [It was Sunday.]        |

### 3. Kesho itakuwa siku gani?

[What day will it be tomorrow?]

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| a). Itakuwa Jumanne.  | [It will be Tuesday.]  |
| b). Kesho ni Jumanne. | [Tomorrow is Tuesday.] |
| c). Ni Jumanne.       | [It's Tuesday.]        |

#### 4. Ulifanya nini jana / Jana ulifanya nini?

[What did you do yesterday?]

Nilikula, nililala na nilisoma jana. / Jana nilikula, nililala na nilisoma.

[I ate, I slept and I studied yesterday. / Yesterday I ate, I slept and I studied.]

#### 5. Utafanya nini kesho?

[What will you do tomorrow?]

Kesho nitaenda darasani na kazini. [Tomorrow I will go to class and work.]

#### 6. Utafanya nini kesho asubuhi/mchana/jioni/usiku?

[What will you do tomorrow morning/afternoon/evening/night?]

Kesho nitaenda dukani.

[Tomorrow I will go to the store.]

#### 7. Ulifanya nini jana jioni / Jana jioni ulifanya nini?

[What did you do yesterday evening?]

Nilikula, nililala na nilisoma jana jioni /  
Jana jioni nilikula, nililala na nilisoma.

[I ate, I slept and I studied  
yesterday evening. / Yesterday  
evening I ate, I slept and I  
studied.]

#### 8. Umefanya nini leo?

[What did you do today?]

Leo nimefanya kazi ya nyumbani  
na kusoma.

[Today I did homework and  
studied.]

#### 9. Umefanya nini leo asubuhi/mchana/jioni/usiku?

[What did you do this morning/afternoon/evening/night?]

Nimefanya \_\_\_\_\_.

[I did \_\_\_\_\_.]

#### 10. Habari za leo?

[How is today? / What is the news of today?]

Nzuri/ njema/ salama/ sawa/ safi/ poa.

[Good/ nice/ peaceful/ fine/  
clean/ cool]

## **11. Habari za jana?**

[What's the news of yesterday?]

Nzuri/ njema/ salama/ sawa/ safi/ poa

[Good/ nice/ peaceful/ fine/  
clean/ cool]



# Lesson 16:

## Months of the Year

### Months of the Year [miezi ya mwaka]

Mwezi/Miezi [Month(s)]

#### A). Months

Januari	mwezi wa kwanza (first)	January
Februari	mwezi wa pili	February
Machi	mwezi wa tatu	March
Aprili	mwezi wa nne	April
Mei	mwezi wa tano	May
Juni	mwezi wa sita	June
Julai	mwezi wa saba	July
Agosti	mwezi wa nane	August
Septemba	mwezi wa tisa	September
Oktoba	mwezi wa kumi	October
Novemba	mwezi wa kumi na moja	November
Desemba	mwezi wa kumi na mbili	December

#### Zingatia [note]

tarehe mwezi/miezi mwaka/miaka zaliwa lini	[date] [month(s)] [year(s)] [to be born] [when]
--	---

#### Question Formation

Mfano:

#### 1. Ulizaliwa lini?

[When were you born?]

Nilizaliwa tarehe mbili, mwezi wa tisa, mwaka wa elfu moja mia tisa themanini na tano.

[I was born September 2, 1985.]

# Lesson 17:

## Time

### Time [saa]

Most languages of Eastern Africa tell the time of the day by referring to 12 hours of day time and 12 hours of night time:

- 7:00 am is referred to as *saa moja asubuhi* to mean that it is the first hour of the day.
- 7:00 pm is called *saa moja usiku* to indicate that it is the first hour of the night.

### A). Times of Day

saa moja	[first hour]	7:00 am / pm
saa mbili	[second hour]	8:00 am / pm
saa tatu	[third hour]	9:00 am / pm
saa nne	[fourth hour]	10:00 am / pm
saa tano	[fifth hour]	11:00 am / pm
saa sita	[sixth hour]	12:00 am / pm
saa saba	[seventh hour]	1:00 am / pm
saa nane	[eighth hour]	2:00 am / pm
saa tisa	[ninth hour]	3:00 am / pm
saa kumi	[tenth hour]	4:00 am / pm
saa kumi na moja	[eleventh hour]	5:00 am / pm
saa kumi na mbili	[twelfth hour]	6:00 am / pm

### B). Vocabulary

asubuhi	[morning]
mchana	[afternoon]
adhuhuri	[midday]
alasiri	[late afternoon/early evening]
jioni/machweo/machwa/ magharibi	[evening]
mafungia ngombe	[between evening and 11 pm]
usiku	[night]
usiku mchanga	[between 7 pm and 11 pm]
usiku mkuu/usiku wa manane	[between midnight and 3 am]

majogoo	[between 3 am and 4 am]
machweo/mawio/ mapambazuko	[early morning, pre-dawn]
alfajiri	[dawn]
mafungulia ngombe	[between 8 am and 11 am]

### C). How to state time

	Kwa Kiingereza	Kwa Kiswahili
	<b>7 am</b>	saa moja asubuhi
	<b>8 am</b>	saa mbili asubuhi
	<b>9 am</b>	saa tatu asubuhi
	<b>10 am</b>	saa nne asubuhi
	<b>11 am</b>	saa tano asubuhi
	<b>12 pm</b>	saa sita mchana
	<b>1 pm</b>	saa saba mchana
	<b>2 pm</b>	saa nane mchana
	<b>3 pm</b>	saa tisa mchana
	<b>4 pm</b>	saa kumi jioni
	<b>5 pm</b>	saa kumi na moja jioni
	<b>6 pm</b>	saa kumi na mbili jioni
	<b>7 pm</b>	saa moja usiku
	<b>8 pm</b>	saa mbili usiku
	<b>9 pm</b>	saa tatu usiku
	<b>10 pm</b>	saa nne usiku
	<b>11 pm</b>	saa tano usiku
	<b>12 am</b>	saa sita usiku
	<b>1 am</b>	saa saba usiku
	<b>2 am</b>	saa nane usiku
	<b>3 am</b>	saa tisa usiku
	<b>4 am</b>	saa kumi alfajiri
	<b>5 am</b>	saa kumi na moja alfajiri
	<b>6 am</b>	saa kumi na mbili alfajiri

### D). Other important vocabularies of time

a). <b>saa</b>	[hour]	<b>saa</b> sita mchana/ saa sita kamili mchana	[12:00 pm]
b). <b>dakika</b>	[minutes]	saa kumi na <b>dakika</b> kumi jioni	[4:10 pm]
c). <b>sekunde</b>	[seconds]	saa tano na nusu na <b>sekunde</b> ishirini na tano asubuhi	[11:30:25 am]

d). <b>nusu</b>	[half]	saa nne na <b>nusu</b> asubuhi	[10:30 am]
e). <b>kamili</b>	[exact]	saa tisa <b>kamili</b> usiku/ saa tisa usiku	[3:00 am sharp]
f). <b>robo</b>	[quarter after]	saa sita <b>na robo</b> mchana/ saa sita na dakika kumi na tano mchana	[12:15 pm]
g). <b>kasororobo</b>	[quarter to]	saa nne <b>kasororobo</b> asubuhi/ saa nne na dakika arobaini na tano asubuhi	[9:45 am]

### Zingatia [Note]

saa	[time]
ngapi?	[what?]
Saa ngapi?	[What time?]
sasa	[now]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Ni saa ngapi sasa / sasa ni saa ngapi?

[What is the time now?]

a). Sasa ni saa mbili asubuhi.

[Now it is 8:00 am.]

b). Ni saa mbili asubuhi.

[It is 8:00 am.]

### 2. Ni saa ngapi?

[What is the time?]

Ni saa tatu usiku.

[It is 9:00 pm.]

### 3. Utaenda nyumbani saa ngapi?

[What time are you going home?]

a). Nitaenda nyumbani saa nane mchana.

[I will go home at 2:00 pm.]

b). Nitaenda saa nane mchana.

[I will go at 2:00 pm.]

### 4. Utakula chakula cha asubuhi/mchana/usiku saa ngapi?

[What time will you eat breakfast/lunch/dinner?]

a). Nitakula chakula cha mchana saa saba  
mchana.

[I will eat lunch at 1:00 pm.]

b). Nitakula saa saba mchana.

[I will eat at 1:00 pm.]

## 5. Ulilala saa ngapi jana?

[What time did you sleep yesterday?]

a). Jana nililala saa tano usiku.

[Yesterday I slept at 11:00 pm.]

b). Nililala saa tano usiku.

[I slept at 11:00 pm.]

## 6. Utaenda karamuni/filamuni/Kansas City/Michigan saa ngapi?

[What time are you going to the party/movie/Kansas City/Michigan?]

a). Nitaenda karamuni/filamuni/Kansas City/Michigan saa sita usiku.

[I will go to the party/movie/Kansas City/Michigan at midnight.]

b). Nitaenda saa sita usiku.

[I will go at 12:00 am.]

## 7. Utacheza saa ngapi?

[What time will you play?]

Nitacheza saa \_\_\_\_\_.

[I will play at \_\_\_\_\_.]

## 8. Utaimba saa ngapi?

[What time will you sing?]

Nitaimba \_\_\_\_\_.

[I will sing at \_\_\_\_\_.]

## 9. Utamaliza kazi ya nyumbani saa ngapi?

[What time will you finish doing homework?]

a). Nitamaliza kazi ya nyumbani saa \_\_\_\_\_.

[I finish doing homework at \_\_\_\_\_.]

b). Nitamaliza \_\_\_\_\_.

[I will finish at \_\_\_\_\_.]

## 10. Utafundisha Kiswahili saa ngapi?

[What time will you teach Kiswahili?]

a). Nitafundisha Kiswahili \_\_\_\_\_.

[I will teach Kiswahili at \_\_\_\_\_.]

b). Nitafundisha \_\_\_\_\_.

[I will teach at \_\_\_\_\_.]

**11. Utapika kuku/pizza saa ngapi?**

[What time will you cook chicken/pizza?]

- |                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a). Nitapika kuku/pizza saa _____. | [I will cook chicken/pizza at _____.] |
| b). Nitapika _____.                | [I will cook at _____.]               |

**12. Utafika darasani saa ngapi?**

[What time will you reach class?]

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a). Nitafika darasani saa _____. | [I will reach class at _____.] |
| b). Nitafika saa _____.          | [It will arrive at _____.]     |

**13. Utasafisha nyumba saa ngapi?**

[What time will you clean the house?]

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Nitasafisha nyumba saa _____. | [I will clean the house at _____.] |
| Nitasafisha _____.            | [I will clean at _____.]           |

# Lesson 18:

## Courses, Schedule, Routine

### Courses, Schedule, Routine

[kosi, ratiba, shughuli za kila siku]

#### A). Vocabulary

kosi	[course]
ratiba	[schedule]
ratiba ya kila siku	[daily schedule]
desturi; shughuli	[routine]
desturi/shughuli za kila siku	[daily routine]
robo	[quarter]
semesta	[semester]
muhula	[term]
hadi/mpaka	[until]

#### B). Daily Schedule [ratiba ya kila siku]

##### [7:00 am - 8:00 am]

Saa moja asubuhi **hadi/mpaka** saa mbili asubuhi:

Huamka, hunawa uso, huoga na hula chakula cha asubuhi au hunywa kahawa.

[I wake up, wash my face, shower, and eat breakfast or drink coffee.]

##### [8:00 am - 12:00 pm]

Saa mbili asubuhi **hadi/mpaka** saa sita mchana:

Huenda darasani, na husoma darasani.

[I go to class, and I study in class.]

##### [12:00 pm - 1:00 pm]

Saa sita mchana **hadi/mpaka** saa saba mchana:

Hula chakula cha mchana na hulala kidogo.

[I eat lunch and sleep a little.]

**[2:00 pm - 4:00 pm]**

Saa nane mchana **hadi/mpaka** saa kumi mchana:  
Huenda/hurudi darasani tena.  
[I go/return to class again.]

**[5:00 pm - 7:00 pm]**

Saa kumi na moja jioni **hadi/mpaka** saa moja usiku:  
Hucheza, hukimbia, hufanya mazoezi, na huenda kazini.  
[I play, run, work out, and go to work.]

**[7:00 pm - 8:00 pm]**

Saa moja usiku **hadi/mpaka** saa mbili usiku:  
Hula chakula cha jioni na huenda kwenye filamu.  
[I eat dinner and go to a movie.]

**[8:00 am - 9:00 pm]**

Saa mbili usiku **hadi/mpaka** saa tatu usiku:  
Hufanya kazi ya nyumbani na huenda mkutanoni.  
[I do homework and go to a meeting.]

**[9:00 pm - 12:00 am]**

Saa tatu usiku **hadi/mpaka** saa sita usiku:  
Husoma historia/Kiswahili, hufanya marudio na pia hupiga nguo pasi.  
[I study history/Kiswahili, I do a review and iron clothes.]

**[12:00 am - 6:00 am]**

Saa sita usiku **hadi/mpaka** saa kumi na mbili alfajiri:  
Hupumzika nyumbani mwangu na hulala hadi/mpaka asubuhi.  
[I rest at my house and sleep until morning.]



## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Wewe hufanya nini kila siku?

[What do you do every day?]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Mimi hufanya mambo mengi kila siku kwa mfano: _____. | [I do a lot of things every day, for example: _____.] |
| b). Mimi huenda filamuni.                                | [I go to a movie.]                                    |
| c). Mimi huenda mkutanoni.                               | [I go to a meeting.]                                  |
| d). Mimi huenda michezoni.                               | [I go to games.]                                      |

### 2. Ratiba yako ni gani semesta hii?

[What is your schedule this semester?]

- |                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a). Semesta hii ratiba yangu ni: | [This semester my schedule is:] |
| b). Ratiba yangu semesta hii ni: | [My schedule this semester is:] |

### 3. Unafanya kosi gani semesta hii?; Semesta hii unafanya kosi gani?

[What courses are you taking this semester?]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a). Semesta hii ninafanya kosi nyingi kwa mfano/kama/kama vile Kiswahili... | [This semester I am taking many courses for example/like/such as Kiswahili...] |
| b). Ninafanya kosi nyingi kwa mfano/kama/kama vile Kiswahili...             | [I am taking many courses for example/like/such as Kiswahili...]               |

### 4. Unasoma nini semesta hii/semesta hii unasoma nini?

[What are you studying this semester?]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Semesta hii ninasoma Kiswahili, historia | [This semester I am studying Kiswahili, history.] |
| b). Semesta hii nina kazi nyingi sana.       | [This semester I have a lot of work]              |
| c). Semesta hii nina kazi kidogo.            | [This semester I have little work.]               |
| d). Sisomi masomo yoyote.                    | [I am not taking any studies.]                    |

### 5. Mimi ninapenda/sipendi semesta hii kwa sababu...

[I like/don't like this semester because...]

# Lesson 19:

## Household Chores and Daily Activities

### Household Chores and Daily Activities [shughuli za kila siku]

#### A). Household Chores

fua nguo	[wash clothes]
kamua nguo	[rinse clothes]
kausha nguo	[dry clothes]
osha uso	[wash the face]
nawa mikono	[clean the hands]
osha/ogesha mtoto	[wash the child]
pakua chakula	[serve the food]
pasa nguo	[iron clothes]
piga pasi	[iron]
pika chakula	[cook food]
safisha chumba	[clean the room]
tandika kitanda	[make the bed]
piga deki	[mop the house]
panguza meza	[dust the table]
panga nguo	[arrange clothes]
piga huva	[vacuum clean]
chemsha chai/chakula	[boil tea/food]
oga bafuni	[take a shower in the bathroom]
fua nguo	[wash clothes]
kamua nguo	[rinse clothes]

## B). Daily Activities

kuamka	[to wake up]
kunawa uso	[to wash the face]
kuoga bafuni	[to take a shower]
kula/kupata chakula cha asubuhi, kula/kupata staftahi, kula/kupata kiamshakinywa	} [to eat breakfast]
kula/kupata chakula cha mchana, kula/kupata maankuli	} [to eat lunch]
kula/kupata chakula cha jioni/usiku	[to eat dinner]
kupiga mswaki	[to brush the teeth]
kwenda darasani	[to go to class]
kusoma historia	[to study history]
kulala	[to sleep]
kwenda michezoni	[to go play sports]
kukimbia	[to run]
kufanya mazoezi	[to do exercises]
kwenda kazini	[to go to work]
kwenda filamuni	[to go to a movie]
kwenda maktabani	[to go to the library]
kwenda dukani	[to go to the stores]
kwenda sokoni	[to go to the market]
kufanya kazi ya nyumbani	[to do homework]
kwenda mkutanoni	[to go to a meeting]
kwenda kanisani	[to go to church]
kwenda karamuni	[to go to a party]
kustarehe / kupumzika nyumbani	[to rest at home]
kuona televisheni	[to watch television]
kufanya marudio	[to do review]
kwenda mkahawani	[to go to a restaurant]
kupiga chapa	[to type]
kupiga picha	[to take a picture]
kupiga simu	[to make a call]

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

**1. Mama yako anapika chakula kizuri.**

[Your mother is cooking good food.]

**2. Kabla ya kula, tafadhali nawa/osha/safisha mikono.**

[Before eating, please wash/clean your hands.]

**3. Yeye hufua nguo kila wikendi/saa.**

[He/She washes clothes every weekend/time.]

**4. Nitatandika kitanda baada ya kuamka.**

[I will make the bed after I wake up.]

**5. Mama huoga/huogeshwa mtoto bafuni.**

[The mother washes the child in the bathtub.]

**6. Jana nilienda filamuni/karamuni/maktabani/  
dukani/sokoni.**

[Yesterday I went to a movie/party/library/store/market.]

**7. Rafiki yangu na mimi tutasoma historia.**

[My friend and I will study history.]

**8. Mimi hupata staftahi/hula chakula cha asubuhi katika  
mkahawa kila asubuhi.**

[I get breakfast at a café each morning.]

**9. Baba yangu anapenda kuona televisheni.**

[My father likes to watch television.]

**10. Mimi hupiga mswaki kabla ya kulala.**

[I brush my teeth before sleeping.]

**11. Nitaenda dukani baada ya darasa.**

[I will go to the store after class.]

**12. Nitaenda mkahawani kabla ya kwenda maktabani.**

[I will go to the restaurant before going to the library.]

**13. Nitatandika kitanda baada ya kuamka.**

[I will spread the bed after waking up.]

# Lesson 20:

## Foods

### Foods [vyakula]

#### A). Foods

Chakula / vyakula	[food / foods]
mboga / mboga	[vegetable / vegetables]
dengu / dengu	[mung bean / lentils]
jibini / jibini	[cheese / cheeses]
kabeji / kabeji; kabichi	[cabbage / cabbages]
kiazi / viazi	[potato / potatoes]
maharagwe / mandondo	[bean / beans]
maharagwe / mandondo	
mahindi	[maize / corn]
mahindi ya kuchoma	[roasted maize / corn]
mbaazi / mbaazi	[pea / peas]
mchele	[uncooked rice]
wali	[cooked rice]
mchicha / michicha	[spinach / spinaches]
mchuzi / michuzi	[soup / soups]
muhogo / mihogo	[cassava / cassavas]
nyama / nyama	[meat / meats]
nyama ya kondoo	[mutton]
nyama ya kuku	[chicken meat]
nyama ya mbuzi	[goat meat]
nyama ya ng'ombe	[beef]
nyama ya nguruwe	[pork]
nyama ya kuchoma	[roasted/grilled meat]
kuku	[chicken]
samaki	[fish]
pilipili	[pepper]
pilipili hoho	[chili pepper]
pilipili manga	[black pepper]

<b>pilipili saumu</b>	<b>[pepper garlic]</b>
<b>pilipili kichaa</b>	<b>[hot pepper]</b>
<b>siagi</b>	<b>[butter]</b>
<b>sukuma wiki</b>	<b>[collard greens]</b>
<b>unga</b>	<b>[flour]</b>
<b>unga wa mahindi</b>	<b>[corn flour]</b>
<b>unga wa ngano</b>	<b>[wheat flour]</b>
<b>yai / mayai</b>	<b>[egg / eggs]</b>
<b>vitafunio; karanga</b>	<b>[snacks]</b>
<b>mkate / mikate</b>	<b>[bread / breads]</b>
<b>mandazi / mandazi</b>	<b>[bun / buns]</b>
<b>sandwichi</b>	<b>[sandwich]</b>
<b>kimanda</b>	<b>[toast]</b>
<b>chapati / chapati</b>	<b>[Indian flat bread]</b>
<b>ugali / sima</b>	<b>[stiff cornmeal porridge]</b>
<b>njugu / njugu</b>	<b>[groundnut / peanuts]</b>
<b>karoti / karoti</b>	<b>[carrot / carrots]</b>
<b>choroko</b>	<b>[green peas]</b>
<b>njegere</b>	<b>[pigeon peas]</b>
<b>bamia</b>	<b>[okra]</b>
<b>kisamvu</b>	<b>[cassava leaves]</b>
<b>figo/figo</b>	<b>[kidney / kidneys]</b>
<b>maini / maini</b>	<b>[liver / livers]</b>
<b>matumbo / matumbo</b>	<b>[intestine / intestines / tripe]</b>
<b>mbatata</b>	<b>[Irish potatoes]</b>
<b>biringani / biringanya</b>	<b>[eggplant / eggplants]</b>
<b>mabiringani</b>	
<b>saladi</b>	<b>[salad]</b>
<b>brokoli</b>	<b>[broccoli]</b>
<b>pasta</b>	<b>[pasta]</b>
<b>pizza</b>	<b>[pizza]</b>
<b>pipi</b>	<b>[candy]</b>
<b>chokoleti</b>	<b>[chocolate]</b>
<b>isikirimu</b>	<b>[ice cream]</b>
<b>keki</b>	<b>[cake]</b>
<b>mgando</b>	<b>[yoghurt]</b>
<b>mchanganyiko</b>	<b>[mixture]</b>
<b>supu</b>	<b>[soup]</b>
<b>uyoga</b>	<b>[mushroom]</b>
<b>uji</b>	<b>[porridge]</b>

muhogo / mihogo	[cassava / cassavas]
viazi vikuu	[sweet potatoes]
kaimati / kaimati	[fritter / fritters]
pilau / pilau	[pilaf / pilafs]
sambusa / sambusa	[samosa / samosas]
kande / pure	[dish of mixed corn and beans]
ndizi / matoke	[banana / plantain /
ndizi / matoke	bananas / plantains]
kibanzi / vibanzi /	[french fries]
chipsi	
borohoa / kihembe	[thick broth of cooked beans]
borohoa / vihembe	

## B). Spices [Viungo]

kiungo / viungo	[spice / spices]
Bizari	[curry powder]
Kitunguu	[onion]
kitunguu saumu /	[garlic / garlicks]
vitunguu saumu	
nyanya	[tomatoes]
mafuta	[oil]
chumvi	[salt]
sukari	[sugar]
pilipili	[pepper]
iliki	[cardamom]
mdalasini	[cinnamon]
tangawizi	[ginger]
magadi	[baking soda / bicarbonate of soda]
lavani	[vanilla]
giligilani	[coriander seed]
mgiligilani /dhania	[cilantro]
karafuu / karafuu	[clove / cloves]

## Zingatia [Note]

na	[and]
pia	[also; too]
lakini	[but]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Wewe unapenda kula chakula gani?

[What food do you like to eat?]

- a). Mimi ninapenda kula \_\_\_\_\_. [I like to eat \_\_\_\_\_.]  
b). Mimi sipendi \_\_\_\_\_. [I do not like \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 2. Wewe unapenda chakula gani?

[What food do you like?]

- a). Mimi ninapenda \_\_\_\_\_. [I like \_\_\_\_\_.]  
b). Mimi sipendi \_\_\_\_\_. [I do not like \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 3. Wewe unapenda kununua chakula gani?

[What food do you like to buy?]

- a). Mimi ninapenda kununua \_\_\_\_\_. [I like to buy \_\_\_\_\_.]  
b). Mimi sipendi \_\_\_\_\_. [I do not like \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 4. Wewe unapenda kupika chakula gani?

[What food do you like to cook?]

- a). Mimi ninapenda kupika \_\_\_\_\_. [I like to cook \_\_\_\_\_.]  
b). Mimi sipendi kupika \_\_\_\_\_. [I do not like to cook \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 5. Wewe hupendi chakula gani?

[What food don't you like?]



# Lesson 21:

## Fruits

Fruits [Matunda]	
A). Fruits	
tunda / matunda	[fruit / fruits]
chungwa / machungwa	[orange / oranges]
embe / maembe	[mango / mangoes]
limao / malimao; limau / malimau	[lemon / lemons]
nanasi / mananasi	[pineapple / pineapples]
ndimu / ndimu	[lime / limes]
ndizi / ndizi	[banana / bananas]
ovakado / ovakado / parachichi/maparachichi	[avocado / avocados]
papai / mapapai	[papaya / papaya]
pera / mapera	[guava / guava]
zabibu / mizabibu	[grape / grapes]
tofaa / matofaa / tufaha / matufaha	[apple / apples]
tikiti maji / tikiti maji	[watermelon / watermelons]
chenza / machenza	[tangerine / tangerines]
zambarau / zambarau	[plum / plums]
nazi / nazi	[coconut / coconuts]
kuyu / makuyu	[fig / figs]
nyanya / nyanya	[tomato / tomatoes]
peya / peya	[pear / pears]
boga / maboga	[pumpkin / pumpkins]
tende / tende	[date / dates]
muwa / miwa	[sugarcane / sugarcanes]
fenesi / mafenesi	[jack fruit / jack fruits]
matunda ya karakara	[passion fruit]

stroberi	[strawberry]
tomoko / matomoko	[custard apple / custard apples]
topetope / matopetope	
stafeli / stafeli	
zeituni /zeituni	[olive / olives]
balungi / mabalungi	[grapefruit / grapefruits]
danzi / madanzi	
ukwaju / kwaju	[tamarind fruit / tamarind fruits]
kwakwa / kwakwa	[natal orange ( <i>Strychnos spinosa</i> )]
tunguja / tunguja	[cherry tomato]
mgogwe / magogwe	[tamarillo / tree tomatoes]
pilipili / pilipili	[pepper / pepper]
tende / tende	[date / dates]

### Zingatia [Note]

tunda / matunda	[fruit / fruits]
penda	[like]
kula	[eat]
kununua	[to buy]
hapendi	[he/she does not like]
hupendi	[you don't like]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Unapenda matunda gani?

[What fruits do you like?]

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda machungwa na maembe. | [I like oranges and mangoes.] |
| b). Sipendi matunda.               | [I do not like fruits.]       |
| c). Kwa nini? Kwa sababu...        | [Why? Because...]             |
| d). Sipendi matunda yoyote.        | [I do not like any fruits.]   |

### 2. Unapenda kununua matunda gani?

[What fruits do you like to buy?]

- |                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda kununua ndizi.        | [I like to buy bananas.]           |
| b). Sipendi kununua matunda.        | [I do not like to buy fruits.]     |
| c). Sipendi kununua matunda yoyote. | [I do not like to buy any fruits.] |

### 3. Unapenda kula matunda gani?

[What fruits do you like to eat?]

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda kula nazi.         | [I like to eat coconut.]           |
| b). Sipendi kula matunda.        | [I do not like to eat fruits.]     |
| c). Sipendi kula matunda yoyote. | [I do not like to eat any fruits.] |

### 4. Wewe hupendi matunda gani?

[What fruits don't you like?]

Mimi sipendi _____.	[I don't like _____.]
---------------------	-----------------------

### 5. Yeye hapendi matunda gani?

[What fruits does he/she not like?]

Yeye hapendi _____?	[He/She does not like _____.]
---------------------	-------------------------------

# Lesson 22:

## Drinks

### Drinks [vinywaji]

#### A). Drinks

kinywaji / vinywaji	[drink / drinks]
chai	[tea]
kahawa	[coffee]
pombe	[alcohol]
maji	[water]
jusi	[juice; fruit juice]
maji ya zabibu	[grape juice]
maji ya ukwaju	[tamarind juice]
maji ya chenza	[tangerine juice]
maji ya limao/limau	[lemonade]
maji ya machungwa	[orange juice]
maji ya maembe	[mango juice]
maji ya mapera	[guava juice]
maji ya ndimu	[lime juice]
maji ya matofaa	[apple juice]
maji ya mananasi	[pineapple juice]
maji ya nazi	[coconut juice]
maji ya matunda ya karakara	[passion fruit juice]
maziwa	[milk]
soda	[soda]
mvinyo; divai	[wine]
spiriti	[spirits]
wiski	[whiskey]
vodka	[vodka]
jin	[gin]
rum	[rum]
tembo	[palm wine]
chang'aa	[illicit liquor]
mnazi	[coconut wine]
ulanzi	[bamboo wine]
muwa / boha	[traditional sugarcane rum]
kangara	[maize and honey wine]

## Zingatia [Note]

chai ya maziwa	[milk tea]
kikombe cha chai/kahawa	[cup of tea/coffee]
glasi ya mvinyo/maziwa/jusi	[glass of wine/milk/juice]
mlevi	[drunkard]
pombe kali	[hard alcohol]
baa	[bar]
chupa	[bottle]
glasi	[glass]
mkebe	[tin/can]
pakiti	[packet]
penda	[like]
kinywaji / vinywaji	[drink / drinks]
kunywa	[to drink]
chochote	[any]
vyote	[all]
sipendi	[I do not like]
hapendi	[he/she does not like]
hupendi	[you do not like]
lakini	[but]
barafu	[ice]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Unapenda kinywaji gani?

[What kind of drink do you like?]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Ninapenda ____.                      | [I like ____.]                          |
| b). Ninapenda chai na kahawa.            | [I like tea and coffee.]                |
| c). Ninapenda chai, kahawa na maji.      | [I like tea, coffee, and water.]        |
| d). Ninapenda chai lakini sipendi pombe. | [I like tea but I do not like alcohol.] |
| e). Sipendi kinywaji chochote.           | [I do not like any drink.]              |

## 2. Unapenda kunywa nini?

[What do you like to drink?]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Ninapenda kunywa ____.                             | [I like to drink ____.]                                    |
| b). Ninapenda kunywa chai na kahawa.                   | [I like to drink tea and coffee.]                          |
| c). Ninapenda kunywa chai, kahawa na maji.             | [I like to drink tea, coffee, and water.]                  |
| d). Ninapenda kunywa chai lakini sipendi kunywa pombe. | [I like to drink tea, but I do not like drinking alcohol.] |
| e). Sipendi kunywa chochote.                           | [I do not like to drink anything.]                         |

## 3. Rafiki/kaka/mama yako anapenda kunywa nini?

[What does your friend/brother/mother like to drink?]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Rafiki/kaka/mama yangu anapenda kunywa ____. | [My friend/brother/mother likes to drink ____.] |
| b). Anapenda kunywa ____.                        | [He/She likes to drink ____.]                   |
| c). Hapendi kunywa ____.                         | [He/She does not like to drink ____.]           |
| d). Hapendi kunywa chochote.                     | [He/She does not like to drink anything.]       |

## 4. Unapenda kunywa pombe gani?

[What alcohol do you like to drink?]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a). Ninapenda kunywa divai.                           | [I like to drink wine.]                                  |
| b). Ninapenda kunywa divai na bia.                    | [I like to drink wine and beer.]                         |
| c). Ninapenda kunywa divai lakini sipendi kunywa bia. | [I like to drink wine, but I do not like to drink beer.] |
| d). Sipendi kunywa pombe yoyote.                      | [I do not like to drink any alcohol.]                    |

## 5a. Unapenda pombe / mvinyo / divai / gani?

[What alcohol / wine do you like?]

- |                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| a). Ninapenda ____. | [I like ____.] |
|---------------------|----------------|

## 5 b. Unapenda pombe ya aina gani?

[What kind of alcohol do you like?]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Ninapenda _____.                                   | [I like _____.]  |
| b). Ninapenda kunywa chai na kahawa.                   | [I like to drink tea and coffee.]                          |
| c). Ninapenda kunywa chai, kahawa na maji.             | [I like to drink tea, coffee, and water.]                  |
| d). Ninapenda kunywa chai lakini sipendi kunywa pombe. | [I like to drink tea, but I do not like drinking alcohol.] |
| e). Sipendi kunywa chochote.                           | [I do not like to drink anything.]                         |

## 6. Hupendi pombe / mvinyo / divai gani?

[What alcohol / wine do you not like?]

- |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| a). Sipendi _____. | [I do not like _____.] |
|--------------------|------------------------|

## 7. Unapenda kununua kinywaji / vinywaji gani?

[What drink / drinks do you like to buy?]

- |                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda kununua _____. | [I like to buy _____.] |
|------------------------------|------------------------|

## 8. Unapenda kununua aina gani ya vinywaji?

[What kind of drinks do you like to buy?]

- |                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda kununua _____. | [I like buying _____.] |
|------------------------------|------------------------|

# Lesson 23:

## Buying and Selling

### Buying and Selling [ununuzi na uuzaji]

#### A). Buying and Selling

bei	[price]
ghali	[expensive]
rahisi	[cheap]
bei nafuu	[fair price]
haipungui	[does not reduce]
hakuna faida/maslahi	[there is no profit]
ninataka	[I want]
shilingi	[shillings]
dola	[dollars]
mwuzaji	[shopkeeper]
mteja	[customer]
Twende!	[Let's go!]
pesa, hela	[money]
Ghali sana!	[Too expensive!]
Bei ghali!	[The price is too high!]
punguza kidogo	[reduce a little]
ongeza kidogo	[add a little more]
bei rahisi sana!	[very cheap price!]
Jamani, Mungu wangu!	[Oh my god!]
Hapana! Tafadhali punguza bei!	[No! Please reduce the price!]
Haiwezekani!	[Utterly impossible!]
Acha bwana/mama!	[Stop it, don't be ridiculous, sir/madam!]

#### Zingatia [Note]

leta	[bring]
nipe	[give me]
nunua	[buy]
ninataka	[I want]
punguza	[reduce/lower]
mteja	[customer]
haipungui	[does not reduce/lower]



## Mazungumzo [dialogue]

Talking with a friend and going to do shopping of various items.

**Halima:** Hujambo Halima?

**Anna:** Sijambo. Habari za asubuhi?

**Halima:** Salama tu, nyumbani hawajambo?

**Anna:** Hawajambo.

**Halima:** Leo, unakwenda sokoni kununua nini?

**Anna:** Ninakwenda kununua vitu vingi leo. Nitanutua matunda mbalimbali kama maembe, mapapai, na machungwa. Wewe utanutua nini?

**Halima:** Mimi nitanutua vinywaji vichache sana kama: soda, pombe, maji ya machungwa, na divai. Pia nitanutua vifaa vya shule.

**Anna:** Haya, twende dukani sasa!

\*At the shop/store\*

**Mwuzaji :** Karibu! Karibu!

**Anna na Halima:** Asante.

**Mwuzaji:** Habari za mchana?

**Anna na Halima:** Salama sana.

**Anna:** Daftari hili bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi ishirini.

**Anna:** Na kitabu bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi kumi na tisa.

**Anna:** Vipi, bei haipungui? Bei ghali sana!

**Mwuzaji:** Haipungui. Bei ni rahisi sana/hakuna maslahi/faida.

**Anna:** Ninataka madaftari saba.

**Mwuzaji:** Vipi, hutaki kitabu?

**Anna:** Hapana. Leo sina pesa nyingi/sina pesa za kutosha.

**Mwuzaji:** Asante.

**Anna:** Kalamu bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi kumi.

**Anna:** Na rula bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi ishirini na tano.

**Anna:** Vipi, bei haipungui? Bei ghali sana.

**Mwuzaji:** Haipungui. Bei ni rahisi/hakuna maslahi/faida.

**Anna:** Nipe kalamu tatu na rula nne.

**Mwuzaji:** Sawa. Na wewe je?

**Halima:** *(You can continue the same dialogue with Halima buying fruits, drinks, spices, foods, school items, etc.).*

**Anna na Halima:** Kwaheri.

**Mwuzaji:** Kwaheri. Tutaonana baadaye.

# Lesson 24:

## Adjectives

### Adjectives [vivumishi vya sifa]

Adjectives are formed by attaching the noun class marker to an adjectival stem.

Adjectives have various properties:

- Word origin (e.g. Bantu, Arabic)
- Borrowed adjectives which do not have prefixes (i.e. non-Bantu)
- Verbal adjectives

In English, adjectives come before the noun, but in Kiswahili adjectives follow the noun that they describe.

### A). Adjectives in Various Noun Classes

- The adjectives below are introduced without any prefix, so that you may recognize them from their roots.
- Adjectives adopt the **prefix that agrees with the noun they qualify**.
- The agreement of the prefixes is identical to the class prefixes of the nouns with which they agree.

Mifano:

1. -zuri	[good, nice, beautiful]
2. -baya	[bad]
3. -dogo	[small, little]
4. -kubwa	[big]
5. -ingi	[a lot, many]
6. -chache	[a few, some]
7. -refu	[tall]
8. -fupi	[short]
9. -zee	[old]
10. -pya	[new]
11. -changa	[young]
12. -haba	[few]
13. -tele	[plenty]

## Bi). Adjective Formation

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	-ZURI [good]	-BAYA [bad]	-DOGO [small]	-KUBWA [big]
M	msichana	<b>mzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>mdogo</b>	<b>mkubwa</b>
WA	wasichana	<b>wazuri</b>	<b>wabaya</b>	<b>wadogo</b>	<b>wakubwa</b>
KI	kiti	<b>kizuri</b>	<b>kibaya</b>	<b>kidogo</b>	<b>kikubwa</b>
VI	viti	<b>vizuri</b>	<b>vibaya</b>	<b>vidogo</b>	<b>vikubwa</b>
M	mkono	<b>mzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>mdogo</b>	<b>mkubwa</b>
MI	mikono	<b>mizuri</b>	<b>mibaya</b>	<b>midogo</b>	<b>mikubwa</b>
JI	gazeti	zuri	baya	dogo	kubwa
MA	magazeti	<b>mazuri</b>	<b>mabaya</b>	<b>madogo</b>	<b>makubwa</b>
N	ndizi	<b>nzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>ndogo</b>	kubwa
N	ndizi	<b>nzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>ndogo</b>	kubwa
U	uzi	<b>mzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>mdogo</b>	<b>mkubwa</b>
U	nyuzi	<b>nzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>ndogo</b>	kubwa
U	uji	<b>mzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>mdogo</b>	<b>mkubwa</b>
U	uji	<b>mzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>mdogo</b>	<b>mkubwa</b>
KU	kufa	<b>kuzuri</b>	<b>kubaya</b>	<b>kudogo</b>	<b>kukubwa</b>
KU	kufa	<b>kuzuri</b>	<b>kubaya</b>	<b>kudogo</b>	<b>kukubwa</b>
PA	pahali	<b>pazuri</b>	<b>pabaya</b>	<b>padogo</b>	<b>pakubwa</b>
PA	pahali	<b>pazuri</b>	<b>pabaya</b>	<b>padogo</b>	<b>pakubwa</b>
MU	darasani	<b>mzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>mdogo</b>	<b>mkubwa</b>
MU	darasani	<b>mzuri</b>	<b>mbaya</b>	<b>mdogo</b>	<b>mkubwa</b>

## Bii). More Adjective Formation

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	-INGI [many]	-CHACHE [few]	-REFU [tall]	-FUPI [short]
M	msichana	——	——	<b>mrefu</b>	<b>mfupi</b>
WA	wasichana	<b>wengi</b>	<b>wachache</b>	<b>warefu</b>	<b>wafupi</b>
KI	kiti	——	——	<b>kirefu</b>	<b>kifupi</b>
VI	viti	<b>vingi</b>	<b>vichache</b>	<b>virefu</b>	<b>vifupi</b>
M	mkono	——	——	<b>mrefu</b>	<b>mfupi</b>
MI	mikono	<b>mingi</b>	<b>michache</b>	<b>mirefu</b>	<b>mifupi</b>
JI	gazeti	——	——	refu	fupi
MA	magazeti	<b>mengi</b>	<b>machache</b>	<b>marefu</b>	<b>mafupi</b>

N	ndizi	——	——	<b>ndefu</b>	fupi
N	ndizi	<b>nyingi</b>	chache	<b>ndefu</b>	fupi
U	uzi	——	——	<b>mrefu</b>	<b>mfupi</b>
U	nyuzi	<b>nyingi</b>	chache	<b>ndefu</b>	fupi
U	uji	<b>mwingi</b>	——	<b>mrefu</b>	<b>mfupi</b>
U	uji	<b>mwingi</b>	——	<b>mrefu</b>	<b>mfupi</b>
KU	kufa	<b>kwingi</b>	<b>kuchache</b>	<b>kurefu</b>	<b>kufupi</b>
KU	kufa	<b>kwingi</b>	<b>kuchache</b>	<b>kurefu</b>	<b>kufupi</b>
PA	pahali	<b>pengi</b>	<b>pachache</b>	<b>parefu</b>	<b>pafupi</b>
PA	pahali	<b>pengi</b>	<b>pachache</b>	<b>parefu</b>	<b>pafupi</b>
MU	darasani	<b>mwingi</b>	<b>mchache</b>	<b>mrefu</b>	<b>mfupi</b>
MU	darasani	<b>mwingi</b>	<b>mchache</b>	<b>mrefu</b>	<b>mfupi</b>

### C). Adjectives with Bantu origin

-anana	[gentle/kindly]	-ke	[female]
-baya	[bad]	-kubwa	[big]
-bichi	[unripe]	-kuu	[great]
-bivu	[ripe]	-kuukuu	[old]
-bovu	[bad]	-moja	[one]
-chache	[few]	-nene	[big]
-choyo	[stingy/mean]	-nono	[fat]
-dogo	[small]	-ororo	[soft]
-ekundu	[red]	-ovu	[evil]
-ema	[fine]	-pana	[wide]
-embamba	[thin/slender]	-pya	[new]
-epesi	[light]	-refu	[tall]
-erevu	[clever]	-tamu	[sweet]
-eupe	[white]	-tupu	[empty]
-eusi	[black]	-ume	[male]
-fupi	[short]	-vivu	[weak]
-geni	[new]	-zee	[old]
-gumu	[hard]	-zima	[whole]
-kali	[fierce]	-zito	[heavy]
-kavu	[dry]	-zuri	[good]
-katili	[mean]		

## D). Adjectives with non-Bantu origin

➤ These borrowed adjectives do not have prefixes

bora	[suitable]
safi	[clean]
nadhifu	[clean/smart]
dhalili	[weak/feable]
duni	[insignificant person/lowly]
rahisi	[cheap]
ghali	[expensive/exorbitant]
baridi	[cold]
hodari	[skilled]
tele	[abundant]
kamili	[exact]
haba	[rare]
muhimu	[important]
shujaa	[brave]
stadi	[steadfast]
bingwa	[winner/victor]

## E). Verbal Adjectives

-angavu	[bright]
-vumilivu	[persevering]
-changamfu	[happy]
-tulivu	[calm]
-tukufu	[excellency]
-dhaifu	[weak]
-takatifu	[holy]
-nyamavu	[silent]
-kunjufu	[pure (heart)]
-potovu	[wayward]

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <b>1.</b> Mtoto mzuri mdogo amelala. | [The good, small child has slept.]     |
| Watoto wazuri wadogo wamelala.       | [The good, small children have slept.] |

<b>2. Mzigo mdogo ni mzuri.</b>	[Small luggage is good.]
<b>Mizigo midogo ni mizuri.</b>	[Small luggage bags are good.]
<b>3. Chakula bora kimepikwa.</b>	[The good food has been cooked.]
<b>Vyakula bora vimepikwa.</b>	[The suitable foods have been cooked.]
<b>Mifano zaidi:</b>	
<b>a). chakula kizuri</b>	[good food]
<b>b). mwanafunzi mbaya</b>	[bad student]
<b>c). mlima mdogo</b>	[small mountain]
<b>d). bahari kubwa</b>	[big ocean]
<b>e). watu wengi</b>	[a lot/many people]
<b>f). matofaa machache</b>	[few apples]
<b>g). mchezaji mrefu</b>	[tall athlete]
<b>h). viti vifupi</b>	[short chairs]

# Lesson 25:

## Clothes

### Clothes [nguo]

#### A). Clothes

nguo / nguo;	[cloth / clothes]
mavazi / mavazi	
kitambaa / vitambaa	[headscarf / headscarves; handkerchief / handkerchiefs; piece of cloth / pieces of cloth]
kofia / kofia	[cap / caps; hat / hats]
rinda / marinda	[dress / dresses]
kamisi / kamisi	[long petticoat / long petticoats]
gaguro / gaguro	[short petticoat / short petticoats]
chupi / chupi / kocho	[underpants]
suruali / suruali	[pants / pants]
suruali ndefu	[long pants; trousers]
kaptula / suruali fupi	[short pants; shorts]
sidiria / sidiria / kanchiri	[brassiere / brassieres]
koti / makoti	[coat / coats; jacket / jackets; blazer / blazers]
fulana / tisheti	[T-shirt / T-shirts]
sweta / sweta	[sweater / sweaters]
buibui / buibui	[veil worn by Muslim women / veils]
kanga	[cotton cloth with four borders]
kitenge / vitenge	[printed cloth / printed cloths]
mshipi / mshipi	[belt / belts]
patipati; malapa	[slippers]
blauzi / blauzi	[blouse / blouses]
shati / mashati	[shirt / shirts]
soksi / soksi	[sock / socks]
suti / suti	[suit / suits]
kabuti / makabuti	[long coat / long coats]
tai / tai	[tie / ties]
miwani	[glasses]



shuka / shuka	[bed sheet / bed sheets]
kikoi / vikoi	[loin cloth / loin cloths]
kiatu / viatu	[shoe / shoes]
kichana / vichana	[comb / combs]
kilemba / vilemba	[turban / turbans]
koti la kuogea	[bathrobe]
koti la mvua	[raincoat]
sketi / sketi	[skirt / skirts]
shumizi / shumizi	[slip / slips]
kizibau / vizibau / vesti	[vest / under-shirts]
jinsi; jini	[jeans]
utandio	[scarf]
glovu	[glove]
buti	[boot]
ovaroli / bwelasuti / surupwenye	[overalls]
barghashia / bulibuli	[white embroidered Islamic hat]
shali / shali	[shawl / shawls]
kaniki	[a dress used by women while working or mourning]

Zingatia [note]	
nguo; mavazi	[clothes]
mavazi ya kiume	[men's clothing]
mavazi ya kike	[women's clothing]
gani	[what]
vaa	[wear]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. (Wewe) Umevaa nguo gani?

[What clothes are you wearing?]

(Mimi) Nimevaa tisheti na jinsi/jini. [I am wearing a T-shirt and jeans.]

### 2. (Yeye) Amevaa nguo gani?

[What clothes is he/she wearing?]

(Yeye) Amevaa sweta, koti, na suruali ndefu. [He/She is wearing a sweater, a coat, and trousers/pants.]

### 3. (Wewe) Unapenda kuvaa nguo gani?

[What clothes do you like to wear?]

(Mimi) Ninapenda kuvaa \_\_\_\_\_. [I like to wear \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 4. (Wewe) Hupendi kuvaa nguo gani?

[What don't you like to wear?]

(Mimi) Sipendi kuvaa \_\_\_\_\_. [I don't like to wear \_\_\_\_\_.]

# Lesson 26a:

## Colors

### Colors [rangi]

#### A). Colors

eupe	[white]
eusi	[black]
ekundu	[red]
samawati; samawi / bluu	[sky blue]
rangi ya kibichi/manjani (kijani)	[green (color of leaves)]
rangi ya machungwa	[orange]
rangi ya kijivujivu (majivu)	[gray]
rangi ya maji ya kunde/kahawia	[brown (coffee)]
rangi ya kahawa	
rangi ya manjano / njano	[yellow (color of turmeric)]
rangi ya zambarau	[purple (tropical fruit)]
rangi ya shaba	[bronze]
rangi ya fedha	[silver]
rangi ya dhahabu / zari	[gold]
rangi ya almasi	[diamond]
rangi ya urujuani	[violet]
rangi ya bluu	[blue]
rangi ya hudhurungi	[mustard]
rangi ya waridi	[pink (color of roses)]
rangi ya giza	[dark color]
rangi ya mwangaza	[light color]
mchanganyiko wa hudhurungi na nyeupe	[roan]
angirangi	[multi-colored]
rangi ya samli (maziwa/kisamli)	[white]
rangi ya bluu giza	[dark blue]
rangi ya bluu mwangaza	[light blue]
rangi ya manjani giza	[dark green]
rangi manjani mwangaza	[light green]
rangi ya nili	[dark blue]

## B). Colors of the Rainbow

nyekundu	[red]
rangi ya machungwa	[orange]
rangi ya manjano / njano	[yellow]
rangi ya kibichi/majani (kijani)	[green]
samawati / samawi	[blue]
nili	[indigo]
rangi ya urujuani	[violet]

### Zingatia [note]

rangi	[color]
vaa	[wear]
nguo	[cloth]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. (Wewe) Umevaa nguo za rangi gani?

[What are the colors of the clothes you have on?]

- a). (Mimi) Nimevaa nguo za rangi nyeusi na kijani.  
[I am wearing clothes of the colors black and green.]
- b). (Mimi) Nimevaa nguo za rangi nyeusi, nyekundu, na kahawia.  
[I am wearing clothes of the colors black, red, and brown.]

### 2. (Wewe) Unapenda rangi gani?

[What colors do you like?]

(Mimi) Ninapenda rangi za kahawia, zambarau, kijivu, na nyeupe.  
[I like brown, purple, grey, and white colors.]

### 3. Rangi za upinde wa mvua ni gani?

[What are the colors of the rainbow?]

Rangi za upinde wa mvua ni \_\_\_\_\_.

[The colors of the rainbow are \_\_\_\_\_.]

# Lesson 26b:

## Colors and Noun Agreements

### Colors and Noun Agreements

Only **three colors** exhibit agreement with the noun; white, black, and red. All other colors do not follow this pattern as the following examples show:

- 1). Rangi ya kijani
- 2). Rangi ya manjano
- 3). Rangi ya bluu
- 4). Rangi ya kahawia
- 5). Rangi ya zambarau

# Colors and their agreements in various noun classes

NGELI [NOUN CLASS]	NOUN [ JINA ]	RANGI -EUPE-	-EUSI-	-EKUNDU-
M	Mvulana	Mweupe	Mweusi	Mwekundu
WA	Wavulana	Weupe	Weusi	Wekundu
KI	Kiatu	Cheupe	Cheusi	Chekundu
VI	Viatu	Vyeupe	Vyeusi	Vyekundu
M	Mpira	Mweupe	Mweusi	Mwekundu
MI	Mipira	Mieupe	Mieusi	Miekundu
JI	Gari	Jeupe	Jeusi	Jekundu
MA	Magari	Meupe	Meusi	Mekundu
N	Nyumba	Nyeupe	Nyeusi	Nyekundu
N	Nyumba	Nyeupe	Nyeusi	Nyekundu
U	Ukuta	Mweupe	Mweusi	Mwekundu
ZI	Kuta	Nyeupe	Nyeusi	Nyekundu
U	Uzi	Mweupe	Mweusi	Mwekundu
U	Nyuzi	Nyeupe	Nyeusi	Nyekundu
KU	Kuimba	Kweupe	Kweusi	Kwekundu
KU	Kuimba	Kweupe	Kweusi	Kwekundu
PA	Pahali	Peupe	Peusi	Pekundu
PA	Pahali	Peupe	Peusi	Pekundu
MU	Maktabani	Mweupe	Mweusi	Mwekundu
MU	Maktabani	Mweupe	Mweusi	Mwekundu

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1). Nguo <b>nyeupe</b> imenunuliwa.                          | [The red cloth has been bought.]              |
| Nguo <b>nyeupe</b> zimenunuliwa                              | [The red cloths have been bought.]            |
| 2).Mtoto <b>mweupe</b> analala kitandani.                    | [The Caucasian child is sleeping in bed.]     |
| Watoto <b>weupe</b> wanalala kitandani.                      | [The Caucasian children are sleeping in bed.] |
| 3).Kiti cha babu ni <b>cheupe</b> .                          | [Grandfather's chair is white.]               |
| Viti vya babu ni <b>vyeupe</b> .                             | [Grandfather's chairs are white.]             |
| 4).Gari la Derrick ni <b>jekundu</b> .                       | [Derrick's car is red.]                       |
| Magari ya Derrick ni <b>mekundu</b> .                        | [Derrick's cars are red.]                     |
| 5).Mpira wa Mike ni <b>mweusi</b> .                          | [Mike's ball is black.]                       |
| Mipira ya Mike ni <b>mieusi</b> .                            | [Mike's balls are black.]                     |
| 6).Rangi ya mbingu ni <b>bluu</b> / <b>samawati/samawi</b> . | [The color of the sky is blue.]               |
| Rangi za mbingu ni <b>bluu</b> / <b>samawati/samawi</b> .    | [The colors of the sky are blue.]             |
| 7).Rangi ya maziwa ni <b>nyeupe</b> .                        | [The color of milk is white.]                 |
| Rangi za maziwa ni <b>nyeupe</b> .                           | [The colors of milk are white.]               |
| 8).Rangi ya damu ni <b>nyekundu</b> .                        | [The color of blood is red.]                  |
| Rangi za damu ni <b>nyekundu</b>                             | [The colors of blood are red.]                |
| 9).Rangi ya theluji ni <b>nyeupe</b> .                       | [The color of snow is white.]                 |
| Rangi za theluji ni <b>nyeupe</b> .                          | [The colors of snow are white.]               |

# Lesson 27:

## Decorations

### Decorations [mapambo]

#### A). Vocabulary

pambo / mapambo	[decoration / decorations]
miwani	[glasses]
kipuli / vipuli / herini / herini / bali	[earring / earrings]
kipini / vipini	[decoration for the ear / decorations for the ears]
mkufu / mikufu	[ornamental chain / ornamental chains;
kikuba / vikuba	necklace / necklaces]
kishaufu / vishaufu/ kikero / kikero hazama / hazama	[decoration for the mouth / decorations for the mouth]
kikuku / vikuku	[decoration for the arm / decorations for the arm]
bangili / bangili	[bangle / bangles]
ushanga / shanga	[bead / beads]
udodi / udodi / nyerere / nyerere	[decoration for the leg / decorations for the leg]
kibeti / vibeti	[wallet / wallets; purse / purses]
begi / mabegi	[bag / bags; handbag / handbags]
marashi / marashi	[cologne / colognes; perfume / perfumes]
hina / hina	[hand/leg decoration / hand/leg decorations]
kidani / vidani	[necklace / necklaces]
ubani	[incense]
pete / pete	[ring / rings]
saa ya mkono	[wristwatch]
mshipi / mshipi	[belt / belts]
chanjo / chanjo / nembo/ nembo	[tattoo / tattoos]
chale / chale	[incision on the body / scarification]
furungu / furungu	[anklet / anklet]
ngeu / ngeu	[red ochre]
wanja / nyanja	[eyeliner]
njuga / njuga	[ankle bells]
ndonya / ndonya	[upper lip plug]



## Zingatia [note]

vaa	[wear]
mapambo	[decorations]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. (Wewe) Umevaa mapambo gani?

[What decorations are you wearing?]

(Mimi) Nimevaa \_\_\_\_\_. [I am wearing \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 2. (Wewe) Unapenda mapambo gani?

[What decorations do you like?]

(Mimi) Ninapenda \_\_\_\_\_. [I like \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 3. (Wewe) Unapenda kuvaa mapambo gani?

[What decorations do you like to wear?]

(Mimi) Ninapenda kuvaa \_\_\_\_\_. [I like wearing \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 4. (Wewe) Hupendi kuvaa mapambo gani?

[What decorations do you not like wearing?]

(Mimi) Sipendi kuvaa \_\_\_\_\_. [I don't like wearing \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 5. (Wewe) Unapenda kuvaa mapambo ya aina gani?

[What types of decorations do you like wearing?]

(Mimi) Ninapenda kuvaa \_\_\_\_\_. [I like wearing \_\_\_\_\_.]

# Lesson 28:

## Proverbs

Proverbs [methali]	
<b>1.</b> Pole pole ndio mwendo.	Slow, slow is the way to go.
<b>2.</b> Haraka haraka haina baraka.	Hurry, Hurry has no blessings. / More haste, less speed.
<b>3.</b> Mtu ni watu.	A person is people.
<b>4.</b> Tisa karibu na kumi.	Nine is near ten.
<b>5.</b> Baba wa kambo si baba.	A step-father is not the father.
<b>6.</b> Akili ni mali.	Intelligence is wealth.
<b>7.</b> Haba na haba hujaza kibaba.	Little by little fills the container.
<b>8.</b> Hasira hasara.	Anger is loss.
<b>9.</b> Mtoto wa nyoka ni nyoka.	The child of a snake is a snake.
<b>10.</b> Adui mpende.	Love your enemy.
<b>11.</b> Dawa ya moto ni moto.	The cure for fire is fire. / Fight fire with fire.
<b>12.</b> Nyumba nzuri si mlango.	A good house is not determined by its door.
<b>13.</b> Kuuliza si ujinga.	Asking is not ignorance.
<b>Mifano zaidi:</b>	
<b>14.</b> Asiyesikia la Mkuu huvunjika guu.	One who does not listen to the elders breaks his leg.
<b>15.</b> Bidii haiondoi amri ya Mungu.	Effort does not remove God's directive.
<b>16.</b> Chovya chovya humaliza buyu la asali.	Dipping a finger to taste repeatedly depletes a jar full of honey.
<b>17.</b> Furaha/ujanja wa nyani huishia jangwani.	The happiness/tricks of a monkey end in the desert.
<b>18.</b> Mchovya hachovyi mara moja.	The dipper does not dip once.
<b>19.</b> Mgema akisifiwa tembo hulitia maji.	If the winetapper is praised, he puts water in the wine.

<b>20.</b> Mtaka cha mvunguni sharti ainame.	One who wants something under (the bed) must bend over.
<b>21.</b> Mungwana ni kitendo.	A good person is (so viewed) by their actions.
<b>22.</b> Polepole za kombe zilimfikisha mbali.	Slow slow of the tortoise made him reach far.
<b>23.</b> Subira huvuta heri.	Patience begets blessedness.
<b>24.</b> Ukiona vyaelea jua vimeundwa.	When you see them afloat, know they have been made.
<b>25.</b> Ukistaajabu vya Musa utaona vya Firauni.	When you are astonished by the story of Moses, you will learn about pharaoh.
<b>26.</b> Damu ni nzito kuliko maji.	Blood is thicker than water.
<b>27.</b> Mungu si Athumani.	God is not Athumani. / God does not choose favorites.
<b>28.</b> Uislamu si kilemba cheupe.	Islam is not a white turban.
<b>29.</b> Kaa nao ujuwe tafsiri zao.	Stay with them to know their translations/interpretations.
<b>30.</b> Vyote ving'aavyo usifikiri ni dhahabu.	All that glitters is not gold.
<b>31.</b> Kuishi kwingi ni kuona mengi.	The longer a person lives on earth, the more he sees; The older the person, the more the experience; There is wisdom in age.
<b>32.</b> Akili ni nywele kila mtu ana zake.	Brains are like hair: each person has his/her own.
<b>33.</b> Mtegemea cha ndugu hufa yungali maskini.	He who relies on his brother's property dies poor.
<b>34.</b> Mstahimilivu hula mbivu.	The patient person eats that which is ripe.
<b>35.</b> Maskini akipata matakio hulia bwata.	When a poor man becomes rich his buttocks jiggle.

<b>36.</b> Kilicho na mwanzo kina mwisho; Hakuna yasiyokuwa na mwisho.	Everything that has a beginning must have an end.
<b>37.</b> Ukitaka kula nguruwe chagua aliyenona.	If you want to eat pork, slaughter a fat one.
<b>38.</b> Ukitaja nyoka shika fimbo mkononi.	If you mention a snake, hold a club in your hand.

# Lesson 29a:

## Body Parts

### Body Parts

[sehemu za mwili]

#### A). Sehemu za mwili za nje [External body parts]

kichwa / vichwa	[head / heads]
jicho / macho	[eye / eyes]
pua / mapua	[nose / noses]
mdomo / midomo	[mouth / mouths]
kidevu / videvu	[chin / chins]
kidakatonge / vidakatonge	[Adam's apple / Adam's apples]
kifua / vifua	[chest / chests]
kwapa / kwapa	[armpit / armpits]
tumbo / matumbo	[stomach / stomachs]
kitovu / vitovu	[navel / navels]
mkono / mikono	[hand(arm) / hands(arms)]
nyonga / nyonga	[wrist / wrists]
kidole / vidole	[digit / digits (i.e. finger, toe)]
paja / mapaja	[thigh / thighs]
goti / magoti	[knee / knees]
muundi / miundi	[shin / shins]
kifundo cha mguu / vifundo vya mguu	[ankle / ankles]
unyayo / nyayo	[sole / soles (of the foot)]
kisigino / visigino	[heel / heels]
tako / matak;	[butt / butts;
kalio / makalio	bottom / bottoms]
kiuno / viuno	[waist / waists]
kisugudi / visugudi	[elbow / elbows]
mgongo / migongo	[back / backs]
bega / mabega	[shoulder / shoulders]
shingo / mashingo	[neck / necks]
ndewe / ndewe	[earlobe / earlobes]
sikio / masikio	[ear / ears]

kisogo / visogo	[back of head]
unywele / nywele	[a hair / hair]
utosi	[crown of the head / center part of the head]
uso / nyuso	[face / faces]
mboni ya jicho / mboni za macho	[eyeball / eyeballs]
kigubiko cha jicho / vigubiko vya macho	[eyelid / eyelids]
usi wa jicho / nyusi za macho	[eyebrow / eyebrows]
tundu la pua / matundu ya mapua	[nostril / nostrils]
jino / meno	[tooth / teeth]
ulimi / ndimi	[tongue / tongues]
shavu / mashavu	[cheek / cheeks]
ndevu / ndevu	[beard / beards]
koo / koo	[throat / throats]
titi / matiti	[breast / breasts]
vidole vya mkono	[fingers]
vidole vya mguu	[toes]
ukucha / kucha	[nail / nails]
ngozi / ngozi	[skin / skins]
malaika / malaika	[a body hair / body hair]
mbeleni / mbeleni	[private part / private parts]

Idiomatic Expressions	
vunjika mkono	[break the hand]
kuanguka chini	[to fall (down)]
kujigonga chini	[to knock yourself down]
kugongwa na gari	[to be hit/knocked down by a car]

# Lesson 29b:

## Internal Body Parts

### B). Sehemu za mwili za ndani [Internal body parts]

ubongo / bongo	[brain / brains]
chango / chango	[small intestine]
ulimi / ndimi	[tongue / tongues]
utumbo / tumbo	[large intestines / guts]
moyo / mioyo	[heart / hearts]
figo / figo	[kidney / kidneys]
kibofu / vibofu	[bladder / bladders]
ubavu / mbavu	[rib / ribs]
pafu / mapafu	[lung / lungs]
ini / maini	[liver / livers]
nyongo	[bile]
wengu / mawengu	[spleen / spleens]
tumbo / matumbo	[stomach / stomachs]
mshipa / mishipa	[vein / veins]
damu	[blood]
kongosho / kongosho	[pancreas]
musuli / misuli	[muscle / muscles]
ufizi / fizi	[gum / gums]
kilimi / vilimi	[uvula / uvulas]
mfupa / mifupa	[bone / bones]
koromeo / makoromeo / koo / zoloto / dundumio / kongomeo	[larynx / throat / esophagus / gullet / air passage]

## Zingatia [note]

uma	[hurt]
umwa	[to be hurt]
mwili	[body]
maumivu	[pain]
sehemu	[part]
inauma	[one that hurts / pains]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Ni sehemu gani inauma mwilini?

[Which part of the body is hurting?]

- |                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a). Ni sehemu ya mguu.        | [It is the leg part.]           |
| b). Ni mguu.                  | [It is the leg.]                |
| c). Ninasikia maumivu mguuni. | [I am feeling pain in the leg.] |
| d). Ninaumwa mguuni.          | [I am hurt in the leg.]         |
| e). Mguu wangu unauma.        | [My leg is hurting.]            |

### 2. Ni sehemu gani ya mwili inauma?

[Which part of the body is hurting?]

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| a). Ni sehemu ya kichwa. | [It is the head part.] |
| b). Ni kichwa.           | [It is the head.]      |

### 3. Unasikia maumivu katika sehemu gani ya mwili?

[Which part of the body are you feeling pain?]

- |                                      |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ninasikia maumivu katika kichwa(ni). | [I am feeling pain in the head.] |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|



# Lesson 29c:

## Parts of the Head

Parts of the head [sehemu za kichwa]	
utosi / utosi	[crown / crowns]
paji / mapaji	[forehead / foreheads]
sikio / sikio	[ear / ears]
ndewe / ndewe	[earlobe / earlobes]
sharafa / masharafa	[sideburn / sideburns]
mianzi ya pua	[nostrils]
kinywa / vinywa	[mouth / mouths]
udevu / ndevu	[beard / beards]
kionjamchuzi	[goatee]
mdomo / midomo	[mouth / mouths]
masharubu	[moustache]
shavu / mashavu	[cheek / cheeks]
pua / mapua	[nose / noses]
taya / taya	[jaw / jaws]
jicho / macho	[eye / eyes]
unywele / nywele	[a hair / hairs]

# Lesson 30:

## Diseases

### Diseases [magonjwa]

#### A). Diseases

afkani	[heart disease]
donda	[ulcers]
glakoma	[glaucoma]
homa	[fever]
homa ya manjano	[yellow fever]
homa ya matumbo	[typhoid]
kansa / saratani	[cancer]
kaswende / sekeneke	[syphilis]
kichaa / wazimu	[insanity]
kichocho	[bilharzia]
kidonda	[wound (noun)]
kifafa	[epilepsy]
kifuakikuu	[tuberculosis]
kikohozi	[cough]
kipindupindu	[cholera]
tumbo la kuhara	[dysentery]
kisonono	[gonorrhea]
kisukari	[diabetes]
kuendesha; kuhara	[diarrhea]
kutapika	[vomiting]
mafua	[cold]
malale	[sleeping sickness]
malaria	[malaria]
mzio	[allergies]
surua / ukambi	[measles]
tibakemikali	[chemotherapy]
umanyeto	[hysteria]
utapio mlo	[kwashiorkor]

UKIMWI	[AIDS]
(upungufu wa kinga mwilini)	
pepopunda	[tetanus]
tekekuwanga	[chicken pox]
ukoma	[leprosy]
ugonjwa wa kupooza	[paralysis]
ndui	[smallpox]
kidoletumbo	[appendicitis]
ugonjwa wa kuambukiza	[infectious disease]
funga choo	[constipation]
maradhi	[diseases]
najisi	[rape]
zimia; zirai	[fainting]
kiungulia	[heartburn]
kifaduro	[whooping cough]
kiharusi	[polio]
baridi yabisi	[rheumatism]
kuumika	[cupping; bloodletting]
perema	[mumps]
kupooza	[paralysis]
matege	[bow-legged / bandy-legged]
ngiri	[hernia]
chango	[intestinal worms]
lukemia	[leukemia]
anemia	[anemia]
goita / rovu	[goiter]
matende	[elephantiasis]
mba / choa	[dandruff / skin disease]
ndui	[smallpox]
tezi	[tumor]
busha	[elephantiasis of the scrotum]
upele	[scabies]
sotoka	[rinderpest]
kimeta	[anthrax]
riahi	[bloating]
mbulanga	[skin disease causing discoloration]
pumu	[asthma]
shinikizodamu	[hypertension]
vidonda tumbo / alsasi	[stomach ulcers]

## B). Extra Vocabulary

maumivu	[pain; hurt]
kufa / kufariki	[to die]
sindano	[needle; syringe]
tembe / dawa / vidonge	[pill]
kupima	[to measure / to examine]
kukinga / kuzuia	[to prevent]
daktari / mganga	[doctor]
daktari wa meno / tabibumeno/	[dentist]
mhazigimeno	
daktari wa macho	[optician]
pata kitanda	[be admitted]
tibiwa	[be treated]
pata nafuu /pona	[get better]
tibu	[treat]
ugonjwa	[illness / sickness /disease]
gani	[which / what]
Usijali.	[Do not worry.]
Usijali utapona.	[Do not worry, you will recover / get well.]
Kwa nini?	[Why?]
kwa sababu	[because]
neli	[tube / pipe]
bilauri / glasi	[glass]
hospitali	[hospital]
zahanati / kliniki	[clinic / dispensary]
mkunga	[midwife]
nesi / mwaguzi	[nurse]
kipimadamu	[sphygmomanometer]
kipimajoto	[thermometer]
koleo	[scalpel]
uyoka / eksirei	[x-ray]
plasta	[plaster / cast]
bendeji	[bandage]
chandarua / vyandarua	[net]
maabara	[laboratories]
vitanda	[beds]
machela	[stretcher]
magodoro	[mattress]
mito	[pillows]

## Zingatia [note]

Kwenda kwa daktari.	[Go to the doctor.]
Kwenda hospitali.	[Go to the hospital.]
Kunywa dawa.	[Drink/Take medicine.]
Kuona daktari.	[See the doctor.]
kupata dawa	[to get medicine]
kuumwa na tumbo/ kichwa/mguu	[to be hurt in the stomach/ head/leg]
furaha	[happy]
huzuni	[sad]
Nina furaha/huzuni.	[I am happy/sad.]
choka	[tired]
Nimechoka.	[I am tired.]
kulia	[to cry]
pole sana	[very sorry]
Mimi ni mgonjwa.	[I am sick.]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Unaumwa na ugonjwa gani?

[What disease are you suffering from?]

- |                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| a). Ninaumwa na malaria. | [I am suffering from malaria.] |
| b). Nina malaria.        | [I have malaria.]              |

### 2. Una ugonjwa gani?

[What disease do you have?]

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a). Ninaumwa na mafua. | [I am suffering from a cold.] |
| b). Nina mafua.        | [I have a cold.]              |

### 3. Hupendi ugonjwa gani?

[What disease don't you like?]

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| (Mimi) Sipendi mafua. | [I don't like the cold.] |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|

### 4. Hupendi ugonjwa wa aina gani?

[What type/ kind of disease don't you like?]

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| (Mimi) Sipendi homa. | [I don't like fever.] |
|----------------------|-----------------------|

# Lesson 31:

## Subject and Object Prefixes

### Subject and Object Prefixes

- A). Subject Prefixes and Noun Classes
- B). Subject Prefixes and Personal Pronouns
- C). Object Prefixes and Noun Classes
- D). Object Prefixes and Personal Pronouns

### A). Subject Prefixes and Noun Classes

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	Subject Prefix	Verb with Subject Prefix
M	mtu	a-	alipendeza
WA	watu	wa-	walipendeza
KI	kiti	ki-	kilipendeza
VI	viti	vi-	vilipendeza
M	mti	u-	ulipendeza
MI	miti	i-	ilipendeza
JI	tunda	li-	lilipendeza
MA	matunda	ya-	yalipendeza
N	nyumba	i-	ilipendeza
N	nyumba	zi-	zilipendeza
U	ukuta	u-	ulipendeza
U	kuta	zi-	zilipendeza
U	urembo	u-	ulipendeza
U	urembo	u-	ulipendeza
KU	kupika	ku-	kulipendeza
KU	kupika	ku-	kulipendeza
PA	pahali	pa-	palipendeza
PA	pahali	pa-	palipendeza
MU	darasani	m-	mlipendeza
MU	darasani	m-	mlipendeza

## B). Subject Prefixes and Personal Pronouns

Subject Prefix		Subject Prefix + Verb
<i>1<sup>st</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>Mimi</b>	<b>Ni-</b>	<b>Nilipenda</b>
<b>Sisi</b>	<b>Tu-</b>	<b>Tulipenda</b>
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>Wewe</b>	<b>U-</b>	<b>Ulipenda</b>
<b>Nyinyi</b>	<b>M-</b>	<b>Mlipenda</b>
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>Yeye</b>	<b>A-</b>	<b>Alipenda</b>
<b>Wao</b>	<b>Wa-</b>	<b>Walipenda</b>

## C). Object Prefixes and Noun Classes

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	Object Prefix	Verb with Object Prefix
M	mtu	<b>-a-</b>	nime <b>m</b> wona
WA	watu	<b>-wa-</b>	nime <b>w</b> aona
KI	kiti	<b>-ki-</b>	nime <b>k</b> iona
VI	viti	<b>-vi-</b>	nime <b>v</b> iona
M	mti	<b>-u-</b>	nime <b>u</b> ona
MI	miti	<b>-i-</b>	nime <b>i</b> ona
JI	tunda	<b>-li-</b>	nime <b>l</b> iona
MA	matunda	<b>-ya-</b>	nime <b>y</b> aona
N	nyumba	<b>-i-</b>	nime <b>i</b> ona
N	nyumba	<b>-zi-</b>	nime <b>z</b> iona
U	ukuta	<b>-u-</b>	nime <b>u</b> ona
U	kuta	<b>-zi-</b>	nime <b>z</b> iona
U	urembo	<b>-u-</b>	nime <b>u</b> ona
U	urembo	<b>-u-</b>	nime <b>u</b> ona
KU	kupika	<b>-ku-</b>	nime <b>k</b> uona
KU	kupika	<b>-ku-</b>	nime <b>k</b> uona
PA	pahali	<b>-pa-</b>	nime <b>p</b> aona
PA	pahali	<b>-pa-</b>	nime <b>p</b> aona
MU	darasani	*	* <i>Never used as</i>
MU	darasani	*	<i>an object prefix *</i>

## D). Object Prefixes and Personal Pronouns

Object Prefix		Object Prefix + Verb
<i>1<sup>st</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>Mimi</b>	<b>-ni-</b>	Amen <b>ni</b> ona
<b>Sisi</b>	<b>-tu-</b>	Amet <b>tu</b> ona
<i>2<sup>nd</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>Wewe</b>	<b>-ku-</b>	Amek <b>ku</b> ona
<b>Nyinyi</b>	<b>-wa-</b>	Amew <b>wa</b> ona
<i>3<sup>rd</sup> Person:</i>		
<b>Yeye</b>	<b>-m(w)-</b>	Amem <b>m</b> wona
<b>Wao</b>	<b>-wa-</b>	Amew <b>wa</b> ona

### Zingatia [Note]

The object prefix must be included **when the object of the verb is an animate object** (i.e. human animals, insects, etc.).

**When the object of the verb is inanimate**, we can have both the object prefix and the object noun or just one of them.

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

**1.** Kiti kilich**on**unuliwa na mama kilipendeza.

[The chair that was bought by mom was very attractive.]

Viti viliv**yo**nunuliwa na mama vilipendeza sana.

[The chairs that were bought by mom were very attractive.]

**2.** Pahali pa Zak **pa**lipendeza.

[Zak's place is attractive.]

Pahali pa Zak **pa**lipendeza.

[Zak's place is attractive.]

**3.** Nimem**m**wona mgeni wa kaka yangu.

[I have seen my brother's guest.]

Nimew**wa**ona wageni wa kaka yangu.

[I have seen my brother's guests.]



# Lesson 32:

## Interrogative Words

### Interrogative Words [vivumishi viulizi]

There are various interrogative words in Kiswahili.

In Swahili, these interrogative words are generally at the end, but they may also appear at the beginning or middle of a sentence.

#### A). lini [when]

- used to ask questions that inquire about the time when an act takes place
- appears where the answer is placed

*Sentensi:*

<b>1. Yeye huzungumza lini?</b>	[When does he/she speak?]
Yeye huzungumza asubuhi.	[He/She speaks in the morning.]
<b>2. Wanafunzi hulala lini?</b>	[When do students sleep?]
Wanafunzi hulala usiku.	[Students sleep at night.]
<b>3. Utaimba lini?</b>	[When will you sing?]
Nitaimba Ijumaa.	[I will sing on Friday.]
<b>4. Utasoma Kiswahili lini?</b>	[When will you study Kiswahili?]
Nitasoma Kiswahili kesho.	[I will study Kiswahili tomorrow.]
<b>5. Utaenda nyumbani lini?</b>	[When will you go home?]
Nitaenda nyumbani saa mbili usiku.	[I will go home at 8pm.]

#### B). -ngapi [how many]

- used only with plural nouns
- answer to the question must be provided in numerical form
- the noun marker is attached to the question word ‘-ngapi’
- works like an adjective, so it is placed after the noun and agrees in class with it

Mifano:

## NGELI

[noun class]

## JINA

[noun]

## KIULIZI -NGAPI

[Question word -NGAPI]

M	simba	-
WA	simba	wangapi
KI	kikombe	-
VI	vikombe	vingapi
M	mlima	-
MI	milima	mingapi
JI	zulia	-
MA	mazulia	mangapi
N	nguo	-
N	nguo	ngapi
U	ukuta	-
U	kuta	ngapi
U	uzuri	-
U	uzuri	-
KU	kucheza	-
KU	kucheza	-
PA	pahali	-
PA	pahali	pangapi
MU	sandukuni	-
MU	sandukuni	-

### Sentensi:

<b>1. Umenunua vitabu vingapi?</b>	[How many books have you bought?]
Nimenunua vitabu vitano.	[I bought five books.]
<b>2. Ana kaka wangapi?</b>	[How many brothers does he/she have?]
Ana kaka sita.	[He/She has six brothers.]
<b>3. Una miaka mingapi?</b>	[How old are you?]
Nina miaka ishirini na minne.	[I am 24 years old.]
<b>4. Ana kaka wangapi?</b>	[How many brothers does he/she have?]
Ana kaka sita.	[He/She has six brothers.]

5. Mna kalamu **ngapi**?

[How many pens do you (pl) have?]

Tuna kalamu kumi.

[We have ten pens.]

### C). -pi [which one(s)]

- question words 'where' and 'which' are expressed by attaching '-pi'
- '-pi' takes both singular and plural forms and varies according to the noun class
- works like a pronoun. It can be used by itself or after a noun which it agrees taking a pronominal prefix of agreement

Mifano:

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	KIASHIRIA [demonstrative]	KIULIZI -PI [question word -PI]
M	mtu	huyu	yupi
WA	watu	hawa	wapi
KI	kichwa	hiki	kipi
VI	vichwa	hivi	vipi
M	mkono	huu	upi
MI	mikono	hii	ipi
JI	jani	hili	lipi
MA	majani	haya	yapi
N	nyota	hii	ipi
N	nyota	hizi	zipi
U	ukuta	huu	upi
ZI	kuta	hizi	zipi
U	ulevi	huu	upi
U	ulevi	huu	upi
KU	kusoma	huku	kupi
KU	kusoma	huku	kupi
PA	pahali	hapa	papi
PA	pahali	hapa	papi
MU	mfukoni	humu	mpi
MU	mfukoni	humu	mpi

### *Sentensi:*

- |                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Ni mtoto yu <b>pi</b> analala?     | [Which child is sleeping?]  |
| 2. Unapenda matunda ya <b>pi</b> ?    | [Which fruits do you like?] |
| 3. Utanunua nyumba i <b>pi</b> ?      | [Which house will you buy?] |
| 4. Ni mti u <b>pi</b> ulianguka?      | [Which tree fell?]          |
| 5. Ni kiti ki <b>pi</b> kilianguka?   | [Which chair fell?]         |
| 6. Ni chakula ki <b>pi</b> kilipikwa? | [Which food was cooked?]    |

## D). nani [who]

➤ 'nani' is only used to inquire about people

### *Sentensi:*

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Mtoto huyu ni <b>nani</b> ?     | [Who is this child?]           |
| 2. Jina lako ni <b>nani</b> ?      | [What is your name?]           |
| 3. <b>Nani</b> anataka kitabu?     | [Who wants the book?]          |
| 4. Ni <b>nani</b> alikula chakula? | [Who ate the food?]            |
| 5. Kaka yako anaitwa <b>nani</b> ? | [What is your brother's name?] |
| 6. Yeye anaitwa <b>nani</b> ?      | [What is his/her name?]        |
| 7. Unaitwa <b>nani</b> ?           | [What is your name?]           |

## E). wapi [where]

➤ 'wapi' is used to inquire about places

### *Sentensi:*

- |                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Wewe unaishi <b>wapi</b> ?     | [Where do you live?]       |
| 2. Wewe unatoka <b>wapi</b> ?     | [Where do you come from?]  |
| 3. Brian amekwenda <b>wapi</b> ?  | [Where has Brian gone to?] |
| 4. Wewe unaenda <b>wapi</b> sasa? | [Where are you going now?] |

## F). nini [what]

➤ used to inquire about things that are being done or will be done

### *Sentensi:*

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Wewe unakula <b>nini</b> ?            | [What are you eating?]          |
| 2. Wewe unaandika <b>nini</b> ?          | [What are you writing?]         |
| 3. Hii ni <b>nini</b> ?                  | [What is this?]                 |
| 4. Wewe umeleta <b>nini</b> ?            | [What have you brought?]        |
| 5. Utafanya <b>nini</b> baada ya darasa? | [What will you do after class?] |
| 6. Wewe unataka <b>nini</b> ?            | [What do you want?]             |

## G). gani [which / what sort / what kind]

- used to inquire about specific things
- its meaning varies depending on the context

### *Sentensi:*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Wewe unatoka nchi <b>gani</b> ?     | [Which country do you come from?]      |
| 2. Wewe unasoma kitabu <b>gani</b> ?   | [Which book are you reading?]          |
| 3. Wewe unapenda chakula <b>gani</b> ? | [What kind of food do you like?]       |
| 4. Mananasi bei <b>gani</b> ?          | [What is the price of the pineapples?] |
| 5. Unasoma masomo <b>gani</b> ?        | [What subjects are you studying?]      |
| 6. Unapenda kinywaji <b>gani</b> ?     | [What drink do you like?]              |

## H). je [how]

- usually affixed to the verb, meaning 'what' or 'how'

### *Sentensi:*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>Je</b> , unakwenda maktabani?     | [Are you going to the library?]                    |
| 2. Wewe uliendaje shuleni leo?          | [How did you go to school today?]                  |
| 3. <b>Je</b> , utasoma Kiswahili jioni? | [Are you going to study Kiswahili in the evening?] |
| 4. <b>Je</b> , unatoka Missouri?        | [Do you come from Missouri?]                       |

## I). na wewe je [how about you]

- used to inquire about the other person

### *Sentensi:*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ninakwenda hotelini. <b>Na wewe je</b> ? | [I am going to the restaurant. How about you?] |
| 2. Ninasoma historia. <b>Na wewe je</b> ?   | [I study history. How about you?]              |

## J). kwa nini [why]

- seeks reason for doing something

### *Sentensi:*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>Kwa nini</b> unasoma Kiswahili?                 | [Why are you studying Kiswahili?]             |
| 2. <b>Kwa nini</b> unapenda pombe?                    | [Why do you like alcohol?]                    |
| 3. <b>Kwa nini</b> unataka kazi?                      | [Why do you want a job?]                      |
| 4. <b>Kwa nini</b> ulienda maktabani baada ya darasa? | [Why did you go to the library after school?] |
| 5. <b>Kwa nini</b> unapenda pombe?                    | [Why do you like alcohol?]                    |

## K). mbona [why]

➤ seeks reason for doing something

*Sentensi:*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>Mbona</b> unasoma Kiswahili?                    | [Why are you studying Kiswahili?]             |
| 2. <b>Mbona</b> unapenda pombe?                       | [Why do you like alcohol?]                    |
| 3. <b>Mbona</b> unataka kazi?                         | [Why do you want a job?]                      |
| 4. <b>Mbona</b> ulienda maktabani<br>baada ya darasa? | [Why did you go to the library after school?] |
| 5. <b>Mbona</b> ulikula chakula?                      | [Why did you eat food?]                       |

## L). kwa sababu gani [for what reason]

➤ inquires about the reason for doing things

*Sentensi:*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>Kwa sababu gani</b> unakula kila siku?   | [For what reason do you eat every day? / Why do you eat every day?] |
| 2. Unapenda mama yako <b>kwa sababu gani</b> ? | [For what reason do you like your mother?]                          |
| 3. <b>Kwa sababu gani</b> unasoma Kiswahili?   | [For what reason are you studying Kiswahili?]                       |
| 4. Unapenda matunda <b>kwa sababu gani</b> ?   | [For what reason do you like fruits?]                               |
| 5. <b>Kwa sababu gani</b> unaenda Kansas City? | [For what reason are you going to Kansas City?]                     |

# Lesson 33:

## Weather

**Weather** [hali ya hewa; hali ya anga]

### A). Weather

baridi	[cold]
joto	[warm]
wingu / mawingu	[cloud / clouds]
mvua	[rain]
rasharasha; manyunyumanyunu	[light drizzle]
upepo / pepo	[wind / winds]
umeme	[lightning]
radi	[thunder]
ngurumo za radi	[thunderstorm]
dhoruba	[storm]
kimbunga / vimbunga; tufani	[heavy storm / heavy storms (e.g. hurricane)]
theluji	[snow]
barafu	[ice]
umande	[dew]
ukungu	[fog]
unyefu; mvuke	[humidity]
chepechepe; nyevu	[moist]
halijoto	[temperature]
halijoto chini	[low temperature]
halijoto kali / halijoto juu	[high temperature]
vipimo / viwango vya joto	[measures / levels of warm temperatures]
vipimo / viwango vya baridi	[measures / levels of cool temperatures]
nyota	[stars]
upinde wa mvua/lindi	[rainbow]
mawimbi kasi	[air waves / gusts]
chamchelea	[whirlwind / tornado / circling winds]
sayari	[planet]
jua	[sun]
mwezi	[moon]

## B). Msamiati zaidi wa hali ya hewa / hali ya anga

Istiwai / Ikweta	[equator]
Tropiki ya Kansa	[Tropic of Cancer]
Tropiki ya Kaprikoni	[Tropic of Capricorn]
Grinwichi / ustiwai	[Greenwich Meridian]
longitudo / mistari ya longitudo	[longitude / longitude lines]
latitudo / mistari ya latitudo	[latitude / latitude lines]
kupatwa kwa jua	[solar eclipse]
kupatwa kwa mwezi	[lunar eclipse]

## C. Sayari [Planets]

### i. Sayari za Ndani [Inner Solar System Planets]

Zaibaki / Zebaki	[Mercury]
Zuhura	[Venus]
Dunia / Ulimwengu	[Earth]
Mirihi / Masi	[Mars]

### ii. Sayari za Nje [Outer Solar System Planets]

Jupita	[Jupiter]
Zohali / Satuni	[Saturn]
Kausi / Uranasi	[Uranus]
Neptuni / Saratani	[Neptune]
Pluto / Utaridi	[Pluto]

### Maelezo:

- 1). Sayari zilizo karibu zaidi na Dunia ni **Zuhura na Mirihi**.
- 2). Sayari kubwa kuliko zote ni **mshatarii**.
- 3). Sayari iliyo mbali zaidi ni **Pluto / Utaridi**.
- 4). Sayari iliyo na uhai na viumbe wenye uhai na ni (mbali na Dunia / ulimwengu) ni **Mirihi / Masi**.
- 5). Sisi wanadamu / watu tunaishi katika sayari iitwayo **Dunia**.
- 6). Sayari moto, kubwa na joto ni **Jua**.
- 7). Sayari inayozunguka Dunia huitwa **mwezi**.



## D. Kuna [There is]

Swahili expresses weather conditions as nouns and not as adjectives like English. Avoid using English structures when expressing such conditions.

*Mifano:*

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. Kuna baridi.   | [ <i>There is cold.</i> (It is cold.)]           |
| 2. Kuna joto.     | [ <i>There is heat.</i> (It is hot.)]            |
| 3. Kuna mvua.     | [ <i>There is rain.</i> (It is raining.)]        |
| 4. Hakuna baridi. | [ <i>There is no cold.</i> (It is not cold.)]    |
| 5. Hakuna joto.   | [ <i>There is no heat.</i> (It is not hot.)]     |
| 6. Hakuna mvua.   | [ <i>There is no rain.</i> (It is not raining.)] |

### Zingatia [Note]

kuna	[There is...]
hali ya anga / hali ya hewa	[weather conditions]
namna gani	[how is (it)]

### Question Formation

*Mifano:*

#### 1. Hali ya anga namna gani leo?

[How is the weather condition today?]

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| a). Leo kuna joto jingi / sana. | [Today there is a lot of heat/warmth. / It is very hot/warm.] |
| b). Kuna joto jingi / sana.     | [There is a lot of heat/warmth. / It is very hot/warm.]       |

#### 2. Habari za hali ya anga leo?

[How is the weather condition today?]

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| a). Leo kuna baridi.           | [Today there is cold. / Today it is cold.]       |
| b). Kuna baridi.               | [There is cold. / It is cold.]                   |
| c). Kuna baridi kidogo.        | [There is a little cold. / It is a little cold.] |
| d). Kuna baridi nyingi / sana. | [There is a little cold. / It is a little cold.] |

### 3. Habari za hali ya anga jana?

[How was the weather condition yesterday?]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Jana kulikuwa na baridi sana/kali. | [Yesterday there was a lot of cold. / Yesterday was very cold] |
| b). Jana ilikuwa baridi sana/kali.     | [Yesterday was very cold.]                                     |
| c). Kulikuwa na baridi sana/kali.      | [There was a lot of cold.]                                     |

### 4. Habari za hali ya anga kesho?

[How will the weather condition be tomorrow?]

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| a). Kesho kutakuwa na mvua nyingi. | [Tomorrow there will be a lot of rain.] |
| b). Kutakuwa na mvua nyingi.       | [There will be a lot of rain.]          |
| c). Kutakuwa na mvua kidogo.       | [There will be a little rain.]          |

### 5. Wewe unapenda hali ya anga gani?

[What kind of weather do you like?]

- |                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| Mimi ninapenda wakati wa baridi. | [I like cold weather.] |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|

### 6. Wewe hupendi hali ya anga gani?

[What weather don't you like?]

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| Sipendi theluji. | [I do not like snow.] |
|------------------|-----------------------|

### 7. Kaka / Dada / Mama / Baba yako hapendi hali gani ya anga?

[What weather does your brother / sister / mother / father dislike?]

- |                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| Yeye hapendi _____. | [He / She does not like _____.] |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|

# Lesson 34a:

## Environment

Environment [mazingira]	
bahari / bahari	[ocean / sea / oceans / seas]
ziwa / maziwa	[lake / lakes]
kisiwa / visiwa	[island / islands]
pwani / pwani	[coast / coasts]
bara / bara	[inland / inlands/ continent]
mtu / mitu	[river / rivers]
mlima / milima	[mountain / mountains]
mbingu / mbingu	[sky / skies]
mti / miti	[tree / trees]
nyasi / nyasi	[grass / grasses]
ua / maua	[flower / flowers]
tawi / matawi	[branch / branches]
jani / majani	[leaf / leaves]
mchanga	[sand]
udongo	[soil]
msitu / misitu; mwitu / mitu	[forest / forests]
chaka / chaka	[thicket / thickets]
jangwa / majangwa	[desert / deserts]
bonde / bonde	[valley / valleys]
bandari / bandari	[harbor / harbors]
bonde la ufa	[rift valley]
eneo / maeneo	[expanse / expanses]
hifadhi / hifadhi	[conservation / conservations]
ghuba / maghuba	[bay / bays]
kilindi / vilindi	[deep channel / deep channels]
mbuga / mbuga	[steppe / steppes; reserve / reserves]
mkondo / mikondo	[current / currents]
mlango wa bahari / milango ya bahari	[strait / straits]
mrima / mirima	[coastland / coastlands]
msitu wa mvua / misitu ya mvua	[rain forest / rain forests]

mwambao wa pwani / miambao ya pwani	[coastline / coastlines]
nyika / nyika	[bare wilderness / bare wildernesses]
pwani ya mchanga	[strand]
ufuko / fuko	[shore / shores]
ufukwe / fukwe	[beach / beaches]
ukanda wa mbuga	[grassland]
ukingo / kingo	[bank / banks]
uwanda wa juu	[upper plateau]
mmea / mimea	[plant / plants]
jumba / majumba / jengo / majengo	[building / buildings]
chemchemi / chemchemi	[fountain / fountains]
dimbwi / madimbwi	[pool / pools]
kisima / visima	[well / wells]
bwawa / mabwawa	[swimming pool / swimming pools]
lambo / malambo	[pond / water catchments]
kiwanja / viwanja	[field / fields]
njia / njia	[path / roads]
barabara / barabara	[highway / way / roads]
shamba / mashamba	[farm / farms]

<b>Bahari [ocean / sea]</b>	
Bahari Hindi	[Indian Ocean]
Bahari Atlantiki	[Atlantic Ocean]
Bahari Pasifiki	[Pacific Ocean]
Bahari Aktiki	[Arctic Ocean]
Bahari ya Mediterani	[Mediterranean Sea]
Bahari ya Sham	[Red Sea]
Bahari Nyeusi	[Black Sea]
Bahari ya Karebian	[Caribbean Sea ]

<b>Zingatia [Note]</b>	
ina	[has]
mazingira	[environment]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Nchi yako ina mazingira gani?

[What environment does your country have?]

**a).** Nchi yangu ina bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[My country has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

**b).** Ina bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi na milima midogo.

[It has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees and small mountains.]

### 2. Jimbo lako lina mazingira gani?

[What environment does your state have?]

**a).** Jimbo langu lina bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[My state has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

**b).** Lina bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[It has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

### 3. Mji wako una mazingira gani?

[What environment does your city have?]

**a).** Mji wangu una bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[My city has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

**b).** Una bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[It has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

#### **4. Mtaa wako una mazingira gani?**

[What environment does your neighborhood have?]

**a).** Mtaa wangu una bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[My neighborhood has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

**b).** Una bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[It has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

#### **5. Nyumba yako ina mazingira gani?**

[What environment does your house have?]

**a).** Nyumba yangu ina bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[My house has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

**b).** Ina bahari nyingi, maziwa machache, miti mingi, milima midogo, mchanga mwingi na fukwe chache.

[It has many oceans, a few lakes, many trees, small mountains, a lot of sand and a few beaches.]

#### **6. Unapenda mazingira gani?**

[Which environment do you like?]

Ninapenda bahari, maziwa, miti na milima.

[I like oceans, lakes, trees and mountains.]

#### **7. (Wewe) Hupendi mazingira gani?**

[Which environment do you dislike?]

Sipendi mito, pwani na majangwa.

[I do not like rivers, coasts, and deserts.]

## **8. Familia yako inapenda mazingira gani?**

[Which environment does your family like?]

**a).** Inategemea kila mtu.

[It depends on each person.]

**b).** Sijui.

[I do not know.]

# Lesson 34b:

## Natural Resources

Natural Resource(s) [Maliasili]	
mtu / mitu	[river / rivers]
ziwa / maziwa	[lake / lakes]
bahari / bahari	[island / islands]
msitu / misitu	[coast / coasts]
ardhi / ardhi	[land / soil]
mlima / milima	[mountain / mountains]
madini / madini	[mineral / minerals]
wanyama pori	[wild animals]
mifugo	[livestock]
chemchemi	[fountain]
nyuni / nyuni / ndege	[bird / birds]
viumbe hewani	[creatures of flight]
tunda / matunda	[fruit / fruits]
sayari / sayari	[planet / planet]
wanyama majini	[sea animals]

Minerals	[Madini]
dhahabu	[gold]
almasi	[diamond]
shaba	[bronze]
chuma	[iron]
lulu	[pearl]
ulanga	[mica]
yakuti	[ruby]
johari	[jewel]
zumaride	[emerald]
zinki	[zinc]
feleji	[steel]
magadi	[soda ash]
makaa ya mawe	[coal ore]
chumvi	[salt]
absesto	[asbestos]
jasi	[gypsum / French chalk]



risasi	[lead]
mangamizi	[magnet]
bati	[corrugated iron sheet / white hard metal]
feruzi	[turquoise]
chokaa	[chalk]
itale / matale	[granite]
tanzanaiti	[tanzanite]
zebaka / zebaki	[mercury]
fedha	[silver]

# Lesson 35:

## Seasons

**Seasons** [nyakati; majira; misimu]

### A). Seasons

vuli; maanguko; mvua chache ; mchoo	[fall; autumn]
kipupwe; baridi kali; baridi sana	[winter]
masika; mvua nyingi	[spring]
kiangazi; joto	[summer]

### Question Formation

Mifano:

#### 1. Huu ni wakati/msimu/majira gani?

[Which season is this?]

**a).** Huu ni wakati wa/ msimu wa/ majira ya kipupwe.

[This is the winter season.]

**b).** Huu ni kipupwe.

[This is winter.]

**c).** Ni kupupwe.

[It is winter.]

#### 2. Wewe unapenda wakati/majira/msimu gani?

[Which season do you like?]

**a).** Ninapenda wakati wa/ majira ya/ msimu wa vuli/masika/kipupwe.

[I like the fall/spring/winter season.]

**b).** Ninapenda vuli.

[I like fall.]

### 3. Wewe hufanya nini wakati/majira/msimu wa joto?

[What do you do in the summer?]

**a).** Mimi hucheza/huimba/hulala/husoma/husafiri/huenda filamuni/hupumzika wakati/majira/msimu wa kiangazi.

[I play/sing/sleep/read/travel/go to movies/ rest in the summer.]

**b).** Mimi hucheza/huimba/hulala/ husoma/husafiri.

[I play/sing/sleep/read/travel.]

**c).** Mimi hupanda maua/hutembelea marafiki na familia.

[I plant flowers and go on walks with friends and family.]

**d).** Mimi hupumzika na husoma katika shule ya kiangazi/joto.

[I rest and I study in summer school.]

### 4. Wewe hupendi wakati/majira/msimu gani?

[Which season do you dislike?]

Mimi sipendi kipupwe.

[I dislike winter.]

### 5. Kaka/Mama/Baba/Dada/Rafiki yako hapendi wakati/majira/msimu gani?

[Which season does your brother/mother/father/sister/friend dislike?]

Kaka/Mama/Baba/Dada/Rafiki yangu hapendi vuli.

[My brother/mother/father/sister/friend dislikes fall.]

### B). Types of wind [Aina za pepo]

kusi	[south monsoon wind]
kaskazi	[north east monsoon wind]
matlai	[easterly wind/ morning wind]
yahom	[westerly wind]

## Mazungumzo [dialogue]

**Maria:** Hali ya hewa/anga Afrika ya Mashariki namna gani? (Hali ya hewa/anga Marekani namna gani?)

**Juma:** Wakati wa kiangazi kuna joto sana/jingi.

**Maria:** Na masika je?

**Juma:** Majira ya/ Wakati wa/ Msimu wa masika kuna mvua nyingi, radi, upepo, theluji, barafu, dhoruba na umande mwingi.

**Maria:** Je, unapenda majira ya/ wakati wa/ msimu wa kipupwe?

**Juma:** Hapana/La sipendi majira ya/ wakati wa/ msimu wa kipupwe.

**Maria:** Wewe unapenda msimu gani?

**Juma:** Mimi ninapenda majira ya/ wakati wa/ msimu wa kiangazi/joto.

**Maria:** Wewe hufanya nini majira ya/ wakati wa/ msimu wa kiangazi/joto?

**Juma:** Mimi hucheza/ huimba/ hulala/ husoma/ husafiri/ hupanda maua/ hutembelea marafiki na familia/ hupumzika na husoma katika shule ya kiangazi.

# Lesson 36:

## Housing and Accommodation

### Parts of the House [sehemu za nyumba]

#### A). Parts of the House

##### **SEBULE/BARAZA:**

kochi / makochi / sofa  
 televisheni / televisheni  
 runinga

rafu ya vitabu  
 zulia / mazulia

taa / taa

meza / meza

paa / mapaa

chupa ya maua

dirisha / madirisha

picha / picha

pazia / mapazia

feni / feni / panka

swichi / swichi

ukuta / kuta

swichi ya feni

swichi ya taa

kinanda / vinanda

redio / redio / rungoya

kaseti / kaseti

kanda za video

saa / saa

saa ya ukuta

benchi / benchi

mchoro / michoro

sanamu / sanamu

simu tambaa /

simu ya mkono

video / video

kimemeshi / dikoda

kalenda / kalenda

##### **LIVING ROOM:**

[couch / couches]

[TV / TVs]

[bookshelf]

[carpet / carpets]

[light / lights]

[table / tables]

[roof / roofs]

[flower vase]

[window / windows]

[picture / pictures]

[curtain / curtains; blind / blinds]

[fan / fans]

[switch / switches]

[wall / walls]

[switch for the (ceiling) fan]

[light switch]

[record player / record players; stereo / stereos]

[radio, radios]

[cassette / cassettes; CD / CDs]

[videotape]

[watch / clocks]

[wall clock]

[bench / benches]

[artwork / artworks]

[sculpture / sculptures]

[cell phone]

[video / videos]

[satellite decoder]

[calendar / calendars]

kiyoyozi / viyoyozi	[air conditioner / air conditioners]
busati / mabusati	[mat / mats]
mkeka / mikeka	
<b>CHUMBA CHA KULA CHAKULA / CHUMBA CHA MAANKULI</b>	<b>DINING ROOM:</b>
meza / meza	[table / tables]
kiti / viti	[chair / chairs]
kabati / makabati	[cupboard / cupboards]
kitambaa / vitambaa	[napkin / napkins]
<b>JIKONI:</b>	<b>KITCHEN:</b>
sahani / sahani	[plate / plates]
kisu / visu	[knife / knives]
uma / nyuma	[fork / forks]
kikombe / vikombe	[cup / cups]
bakuli / bakuli	[bowl / bowls]
ubao / mbao	[cutting board / cutting boards]
kijiko / vijiko	[spoon / spoons]
chupa / chupa	[bottle / bottles]
glasi / glasi / bilauri	[glass / glasses]
matunda	[fruits]
vinywaji	[drinks]
vyakula	[foods]
friji / friji	[refrigerator / refrigerators]
jiko / meko	[stove / stoves]
joko/majoko	[oven / ovens]
matunda kama...	[fruits like...]
vinywaji kama...	[drinks like...]
vyakula kama...	[foods like...]
sufuria / sufuria	[pot / pots]
kikaango / vikaango	[frying pan / frying pans]
kabati la vyombo / makabati ya vyombo	[cupboard / cupboards]
maikrowevu	[microwave]
jaa / jaa	[litter bin / litter bins]
kiungo / viungo	[spice / spices]
muiko / miiko	[wooden spoon / wooden spoons]
seredani / seredani	[charcoal stove / stoves]
buli / mabuli	[teapot / teapots]

birika / mabirika	[kettle / water tank / tub / bath]
jiko la kuni / mafiga	[charcoal stove]
majiko ya kuni	
chano / machano	[round wooden tray]
mbuzi / mbuzi	[coconut grater / coconut graters]
sinia / masinia	[platter]
chungu	[earthen cooking pot / open pot]
jiko la stima / umeme	[electric cooker / stove]
jiko la makaa	[charcoal stove / cooker]
jiko la gesi	[gas cooker / stove]
stova / stova	[stove / cooker]
jiko la mvuke	[steam stove]
jiko la tambi	[wick stove / cooker]
jiko la kawi/sola	[solar cooker / stove]
ukuni / kuni	[firewood]
sufuria / sufuria	[metal pot(s) / pan(s)]
upawa / pawa	[shallow ladle/ shallow ladles]
kifumbu / vifumbu	[straw strainer / straw strainers]
kinu / vinu	[mortar / processing machine]
mchi / michi	[pestle / pestles]
uteo / teo	[winnowing basket]
mashizi	[soot]
majivu	[ashes]
ukoko / koko	[hard crust at bottom of pot]
dohani / dohani	[chimney / flue / smoke stack / narrow basket used to carry fruits]
kikaango / vikaango	[frying pan / frying pans]
susu / susu	[round pad places under a pot to support and raise it up from the ground]
ufu / ufu	[grated coconut]
moto / moto	[fire / fires]

## **CHUMBA CHA KULALA:**

## **BEDROOM:**

kitanda / vitanda	[bed / beds]
godoro / magodoro	[mattress / mattresses]
foronya / maforonya	[foam pad / foam pads]
shuka / shuka	[bed sheet / bed sheets]
blanketi / mablanketi	[blanket / blankets]
mto / mito	[pillow / pillows]
kabati la nguo	[wardrobe]
kompyuta / kompyuta /	[computer / computers]

tarakilishi /tarakilishi  
kitabu / vitabu  
meza / meza  
nguo / nguo  
kizingiti cha viatu  
deski / dawati  
chumba cha wageni



## Zingatia [Note]

ina	[has]
kuna	[there is; there are]
ishi; kaa	[live; stay]
ndani ya	[in; inside; within]
Katika / kwenye / ndani ya	[in; inside; within]
pia	[also]
kitu / vitu	[thing / things]
vingi	[many]
mbalimbali	[different/various]
tofauti tofauti	[different/various]
kama	[like]
kama vile	[such as]
sehemu	[part]
nyumba	[house]
chumba/ vyumba	[room/rooms]
vichache	[few]
Ninaishi katika/ kwenye/ ndani ya nyumba(ni).	[I live inside the house.]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Unaishi/unakaa wapi?

[Where do you live?]

Ninaishi/ninakaa mtaa wa \_\_\_\_, karibu na \_\_\_\_, barabara ya \_\_\_\_.

[I live/stay in the neighborhood of \_\_\_\_, near \_\_\_\_, street of \_\_\_\_.]

### 2. Nyumba yako ina nini/vitu gani?

[What things are in your house? / What things does your house have?]

**a).** Ndani ya nyumba yangu kuna vyumba vingi/mbalimbali/tofauti tofauti/vichache, kama/kama vile \_\_\_\_ na \_\_\_\_.

[In my house there are many/various/ different /a few rooms, like/such as \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_.]

**b).** Katika nyumba yangu kuna vyumba vingi/ mbalimbali/ tofauti tofauti/ vichache, kama/kama vile \_\_\_\_, na \_\_\_\_.

[In my house there are many/various/different/a few rooms, like/such as \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_.]

**c).** Chumba cha kulala/chumba cha kula chakula kina/kuna \_\_\_\_.  
[The bedroom/dining room has/there is \_\_\_\_.]

**d).** Sebule/ barazani/jikoni kuna \_\_\_\_.  
[In the living room/kitchen there are \_\_\_\_.]

**e).** Sebule/baraza pia ina/kuna \_\_\_\_.  
[The living room also has/there is \_\_\_\_.]

**f).** Chumba cha kulala kina/kuna vitu  
vingi/vichache/vidogo/mbalimbali/tofauti tofauti kama/kama  
vile\_\_\_\_. Pia kuna\_\_\_\_.  
[The dining room has/there are a lot of/a few/a little/various/different  
things like/such as \_\_\_\_\_. Also there are \_\_\_\_\_.]

**g).** Ndani ya chumba cha kulala kuna vitu vingi/mbalimbali/tofauti tofauti  
vichache/vidogo, kama/kama vile \_\_\_\_, na \_\_\_\_.  
[In the bedroom there are many/various/different/a few/little things,  
like/such as \_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.]

## Describing One's House

Mimi ninapenda **nyumba yangu** sana. Ninapenda kupika chakula kama/kama vile \_\_\_\_\_ jikoni mwangu. Pia ninapenda kulala, kucheza, kupumzika, kusafisha, kuona televisheni na kusoma katika chumba changu/nyumba yangu. Nyumba yangu ni nzuri sana.

[I like my house a lot. I like to cook food like/such as \_\_\_\_\_ in my kitchen. Also I like to sleep, play, rest, clean, watch television and read in my room/my house. My house is very good.]

Katika baraza ninapenda kupumzika, kuona televisheni, kusoma na kuzungumza na rafiki. Katika jikoni ninapenda kupika na kula vyakula kama \_\_\_\_\_. Pia ninapenda kunywa vinywaji kama \_\_\_\_\_ na kula matunda kama \_\_\_\_\_.

Katika chumba cha kulala ninapenda: kulala, kusoma, kupumzika na kusikiliza muziki.

Katika msala ninapenda: kuoga bafuni, kusafisha uso, kunawa mikono, kupiga mswaki, etc.

Katika chumba cha kula ninapenda kula chakula kama \_\_\_\_\_, kula matunda kama \_\_\_\_\_, kunywa vinywaji kama \_\_\_\_\_.

# Lesson 37:

## Places

### Places [mahali / pahali]

#### A). Places

darasa	[classroom]
maktaba	[library]
nyumba	[house / home]
duka	[store / shop]
soko	[market]
kanisa	[church]
msikiti	[mosque]
hekalu	[temple]
hospitali	[hospital]
zahanati	[dispensary / health center]
duka la dawa	[pharmacy]
duka la vitabu	[bookstore]
chuo; skuli; shule	[school / college]
chuo kikuu	[university]
chumba cha mazoezi	[gym]
chumba cha burudani	[recreation center]
jengo	[building]
ukumbi / kumbi	[hall / halls]
chumba cha kula/maankuli; ukumbi wa kula/maankuli	[dining hall]
kituo cha basi	[bus stop]
kituo cha treni	[train stop]
stesheni ya basi	[bus station]
stesheni ya treni	[train station]
mkahawa	[restaurant]
hoteli	[hotel]
baa	[bar]
kilabu	[club]
ofisi	[office]
posta	[post office]
uwanja wa ndege	[airport]
msala / choo	[restroom]

<b>kaburi</b>	<b>[graveyard]</b>
<b>bwawa</b>	<b>[swimming pool]</b>
<b>mahakama</b>	<b>[court]</b>
<b>bweni</b>	<b>[dorm]</b>
<b>gereza</b>	<b>[prison]</b>
<b>kisiwa</b>	<b>[island]</b>
<b>kiwanda</b>	<b>[factory]</b>
<b>bahari</b>	<b>[ocean]</b>
<b>ziwa</b>	<b>[lake]</b>
<b>mtu</b>	<b>[river]</b>
<b>boma</b>	<b>[homestead / enclosure / compound / household]</b>
<b>bunge</b>	<b>[parliament]</b>
<b>bohari</b>	<b>[store / warehouse / stockroom]</b>
<b>gofu</b>	<b>[ruins]</b>
<b>machinjoni</b>	<b>[slaughterhouse]</b>
<b>machungani</b>	<b>[grazing fields]</b>
<b>dungu</b>	<b>[watchtower / tribune]</b>
<b>chemichemi</b>	<b>[fountain]</b>
<b>bandari</b>	<b>[harbor / port]</b>
<b>forodha</b>	<b>[customs section]</b>
<b>zizi</b>	<b>[pen / paddock / fold / stable / cowshed]</b>
<b>ulingo / jukwaa</b>	<b>[platform / podium / rostrum / stand / stage]</b>
<b>upenu</b>	<b>[appendage to a house / overhang of a roof / corridor]</b>
<b>ghala</b>	<b>[granary]</b>
<b>roshani</b>	<b>[balcony]</b>
<b>handaki</b>	<b>[trench / ditch]</b>
<b>kizimba</b>	<b>[dock / witness stand]</b>
<b>rasi</b>	<b>[cape]</b>
<b>joko</b>	<b>[furnace / kiln]</b>
<b>mimbari</b>	<b>[pulpit]</b>
<b>bangwa</b>	<b>[unfinished construction/building under construction]</b>
<b>duka la viatu</b>	<b>[shoe store]</b>
<b>darasani</b>	<b>[inside the classroom]</b>
<b>nyumbani</b>	<b>[inside the house]</b>

## B). Schools [Shule / Skuli]

shule / shule	[school / schools]
shule ya chekechea / shule ya watoto	[kindergarten]
shule ya nasari	[preschool / nursery school]
shule ya msingi	[primary school / elementary school]
shule ya sekondari / shule ya upili	[secondary school / high school]
shule ya kutwa / shule ya mchana	[day school]
shule ya bweni	[boarding school]
shule ya mseto / mchanganyiko	[mixed / coeducational school]
shule ya wavulana / shule ya vijana	[boys school]
shule ya wasichana	[girls school]
shule ya/za serikali	[government school]
shule ya/za kibinafsi	[private school]
shule ya/za kimataifa	[international school]

## Zingatia [note]

enda	[go]
toka	[come from]
rudi	[come back]
kaa; ishi	[live; reside; stay]
baada ya	[after]
kabla ya	[before]
wapi?	[where?]
sasa	[now]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Wewe unatoka wapi sasa?

[Where are you coming from now?]

Ninatoka maktabani.

[I am coming from the library.]

### 2. Wewe unatoka wapi?

[Where are you coming from?]

Ninatoka maktabani.

[I am coming from the library.]

### 3. Wewe unaenda wapi sasa?

[Where are you going now?]

Ninaenda nyumbani.

[I am going home.]

### 4. Wewe unaenda wapi?

[Where are you going?]

Ninaenda nyumbani.

[I am going home.]

### 5. Wewe utaenda wapi baada ya darasa?

[Where are you going after class?]

a). Nitaenda nyumbani.

[I will go home.]

b). Nitaenda nyumbani baada ya darasa.

[I will go home after class.]

c). Sijui.

[I don't know.]

### 6. Wewe utaenda wapi kabla ya darasa?

[Where are you going before class?]

a). Nitaenda hospitalini.

[I will go to the hospital.]

b). Nitaenda hospitalini kabla ya darasa.

[I will go to the hospital before class.]

c). Sijui.

[I don't know.]

### 7. Wewe unafanya kazi wapi?

[Where do you work?]

Ninafanya kazi mkahawani.

[I work in a restaurant.]

### 8. Wewe unaishi wapi?

[Where do you live?]

Mimi ninaishi \_\_\_\_\_.

[I live in \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 9. Wewe hula wapi?

[Where do you eat?]

Mimi hula \_\_\_\_\_.

[I am eat at \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 10. Wewe huomba wapi?

[Where do you pray?]

Mimi huomba \_\_\_\_\_.

[I pray at \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 11. Wewe huoga wapi?

[Where do you shower?]

Mimi huoga \_\_\_\_\_.

[I take a shower at \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 12. Wewe husoma wapi?

[Where do you study?]

Mimi husoma \_\_\_\_\_.

[I study at \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 13. Wewe hununua chakula wapi?

[Where do you buy food?]

a). Mimi hununua chakula \_\_\_\_\_.

[I buy food at \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 14. Wewe hununua vinywaji wapi?

[Where do buy drinks?]

Mimi hununua vinywaji \_\_\_\_\_.

[I buy drinks at \_\_\_\_\_.]



**15. Wewe hunywa pombe wapi?**

[Where do you drink alcohol?]

Mimi hunywa pombe \_\_\_\_\_. [I drink alcohol at \_\_\_\_\_.]

**16. Ukiwa mgonjwa wewe huenda wapi?**

[Where do you go when you are sick?]

Mimi nikiwa mgonjwa huenda \_\_\_\_\_ [When I am sick I go to \_\_\_\_\_.]  
\_\_\_\_\_.

**17. Wewe hupumzika wapi?**

[Where do you rest?]

Mimi hupumzika \_\_\_\_\_. [I rest at \_\_\_\_\_.]

**18. Wewe hulala wapi?**

[Where do you sleep?]

Mimi hulala \_\_\_\_\_. [I sleep at \_\_\_\_\_.]

**19. Wewe hununua dawa wapi?**

[Where do you buy drugs?]

a). Mimi hununua dawa \_\_\_\_\_. [I buy drugs at \_\_\_\_\_.]

**20. Wewe hununua vitabu wapi?**

a). Mimi hununua vitabu \_\_\_\_\_. [I will buy books at \_\_\_\_\_.]

**21. Wewe hucheza wapi?**

[Where do you play?]

Mimi hucheza \_\_\_\_\_. [I play at \_\_\_\_\_.]

**22. Wewe hupanda basi wapi?**

[Where do you board the bus?]

Mimi hupanda basi \_\_\_\_\_. [I board the bus at \_\_\_\_\_.]

# Lesson 38:

## Transport Mechanisms

### Transport Mechanisms [vyombo vya kusafiri]

#### A). Transport Mechanisms

motokaa; gari	[car; motorcar; vehicle]
treni; gari la moshi; garimoshi	[train]
ndege	[airplane]
baiskeli	[bicycle]
meli	[ship]
boti	[boat]
jahazi; ngalawa; mtumbwi; dau; mashua	[small boat]
lori	[truck; lorry]
toroli	[wheelbarrow]
rukwama; mkokoteni	[pull cart]
pikipiki	[motorcycle; motorbike]
miguu	[legs]
matatu; daladala	[van; minivan; minibus]
basi	[bus]
teksi	[taxi]
helikopta	[helicopter]
trekta	[tractor]
pantoni	[ferry boat]
chelezo	[grindstone]
sitima	[steamship]
manowari; nyambizi	[submarine]
matwana	[passenger lorry]
tuktuku	[tuk tuk]
bodaboda	[bicycle taxi; motorcycle taxi]
skii	[skis]
parachuti	[parachute]
jeti	[jet]
tingatinga	[bulldozer]
kifaru	[military tank]
kiberenge	[trolley; railway handcar]

kreni; wenchi	[winch]
rishko	[pushcart]
wanyama kama farasi, punda, ngamia, na ng'ombe	[animals like horse, donkey, camel, and cow]
<i>Extra Vocabulary:</i>	
uwanja wa ndege	[airport]
wasafiri; abiria	[passengers]
tiketi	[ticket]
kituo cha basi	[bus stop]
kituo cha treni	[train stop]
stesheni ya basi	[bus station]
stesheni ya treni	[train station]
safari	[journey; trip]
safiri	[travel; go on a safari/journey]
mzigo; mizigo	[luggage]
sehemu ya mizigo	[baggage claim]
sehemu ya tiketi	[ticket counter]
vipandio	[staircase]
chumba cha abiria; chumba cha wa safiri	[passenger lounge; passenger station]
wasaidizi wa ndege; wahudumu wa ndege	[airline crew]

## B). Names of those involved in Transport Mechanisms

dereva	[driver]
nahodha	[captain (of a ship/boat)]
rubani	[pilot]
tanboi	["turnboy"]
kondakta; utingo	[conductor (of a train)]

## Zingatia [note]

kuenda; kwenda	[to go]
kusafiri	[to travel]
kwa	[by]
kutoka	[from]
mpaka; hadi	[to; til]
kutumia	[to use]
mbali	[far]
ni mbali	[it is far]
ni mbali kidogo	[it is a little far]
si mbali	[it is not far]
si mbali sana	[it is not very far]
karibu	[near]
ni karibu	[it is near]
ni karibu kidogo	[it is a little near]
si karibu	[it is not near]
si karibu sana	[it is not very near]
kila siku	[daily; every day]
Ulisafirije?	[How did you travel?]
Uliendaje?	[How did you go?]
kutembea	[to walk]
nje	[outside]
njia gani?	[which way?; which means (of transport)?]
kushoto	[left]
kulia	[right]
tumia	[use]
enda	[go]
safiri	[travel]
Je?	[how?]
sehemu	[part]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Uliendaje/Ulikwendaje shuleni/chuoni leo?

[How did you go to school today?]

Nilienda (shuleni) kwa basi.

[I went (to school) by bus.]

### 2. Ulisafirije shuleni/chuoni leo?

[How did you travel to school today?]

Nilisafiri (shuleni) kwa basi.

[I traveled (to school) by bus.]

### 3. Ulitumia nini kwenda shuleni/chuoni leo?

[What means did you use to go to school today?]

Nilienda shuleni kwa basi,  
sikwenda kwa gari.

[I went to school by bus, not by car.]

### 4. (Wewe) Hutumia nini kwenda shuleni?

[What do you use to go to school?]

a). (Mimi) Hutumia basi.

[I usually take the bus.]

b). Huenda shuleni kwa basi, siendi  
kwa gari.

[I usually go to school by bus, not by  
car.]

### 5. Unaenda shuleni kwa njia gani?

[By which means are you going to school?]

Ninaenda kwa miguu.

[I am going by foot.]

### 6. (Wewe) Hutumia nini kwenda shuleni kila siku?

[What do you use to go to school every day?]

Mimi hutumia \_\_\_\_\_.

[I usually use \_\_\_\_\_.]

### 7. (Wewe) Huendaje / Husafirije shuleni/chuoni kila siku?

[What means do you usually use to go to school/college daily?]

Mimi hutumia \_\_\_\_\_.

[I usually use \_\_\_\_\_.]

# Lesson 39:

## Conditional Markers

### -NGE- and -NGALI-

#### Conditional Markers [wakati tegemezi]

#### A). The Conditional Marker -NGE-

-NGE- is a prefix that is used in verbs to express a condition that can still be realized.

-NGE- expressions have two parts:

- the condition
- the consequence

Mfano:

- *the condition:* U-**nge**-wa-ona, [If you were to see them,]
- *the consequence:* u-**nge**-wa-penda. [you would like them.]

Sentensi:

1. Tun**ge**wakuta wa**nge**kula maembe.  
[If we were to find them, they would eat mangoes.]
2. Ni**nge**kaa Florida ni**nge**kula machungwa.  
[If I were to live in Florida, I would eat oranges.]
3. Ni**nge**ishi Chicago ni**nge**ona theluji.  
[If I were to live in Chicago, I would see snow.]
4. Ni**nge**soma Kiswahili ni**nge**enda Kenya.  
[If I were to study Kiswahili, I would go to Kenya.]
5. Un**ge**ona televisheni un**ge**lala mapema.  
[If you were to watch television, you would go to sleep early.]
6. Ni**nge**cheza ni**nge**choka.  
[If I were to play, I would be tired.]
7. Ni**nge**ishi Kentucky ni**nge**kula Kentucky Fried Chicken.  
[If I were to live in Kentucky, I would eat Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

## B). The Regret Marker -NGALI-

-**NGALI**- is a prefix that is used in verbs to express a condition that can no longer be realized (too late).

-**NGALI**- expressions have two parts:

- the event or act no longer possible
- the result too late to come true

Mfano:

- *event no longer possible:* U-**ngali**-wa-ona [If you had seen them,]
- *result too late to come true:* u-**ngali**-wa-penda. [you would have liked them.]

Sentensi:

1. Tungaliwakuta wangalikula maembe.  
[If we had found them, they would have eaten mangoes.]
2. Ningalikaa Florida ningalikula machungwa.  
[If I had lived in Florida, I would have eaten oranges.]
3. Ningaliiishi Chicago ningaliona theluji.  
[If I had lived in Chicago, I would have seen snow.]
4. Ningalisoma Kiswahili ningalienda Kenya.  
[If I had studied Kiswahili, I would have gone to Kenya.]
5. Ungaliona televisheni ungalilala mapema.  
[If you had watched television, you would have gone to sleep early.]
6. Ningaliicheza ningalichoka.  
[If I had played/danced, I would have been tired.]
7. Ningaliiishi Kentucky ningalikula Kentucky Fried Chicken.  
[If I had lived in Kentucky, I would have eaten Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

### Zingatia [Note]

Both -**NGE**- and -**NGALI**- forms are used interchangeably for both the events/acts that can still be realized and those that are no longer possible.

## NEGATION OF -NGE- AND -NGALI-

The negation of **-NGE-** and **-NGALI-** is done by inserting **-SI-**

### A). The Negation of -NGE-

1. U-si-nge-wa-ona u-si-nge-wa-penda.

[If you were not to see them, you would not like them.]

2. Nisingekaa Florida nisingekula machungwa.

[If I were not to live in Florida, I would not eat oranges.]

3. Nisingeishi Chicago nisingeona theluji.

[If I were not to live in Chicago, I would not see snow.]

4. Nisingesoma Kiswahili nisingeenda Kenya.

[If I were not to study Kiswahili, I would not go to Kenya.]

5. Usingeona televisheni usingelala mapema.

[If you were not to watch television, you would not go to sleep early.]

6. Nisingecheza nisingechoka.

[If I were not to play, I would not be tired.]

7. Nisingeishi Kentucky nisingekula Kentucky Fried Chicken.

[If I were not to live in Kentucky, I would not eat Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

### B). The Negation of -NGALI-

1. U-si-ngali-mw-ona u-si-ngali-m-penda.

[Had you not seen him/her, you would not have liked him/her.]

2. Nisingalika Florida nisingalikula machungwa.

[If I had not lived in Florida, I would not have eaten oranges.]

3. Nisingaliishi Chicago nisingaliona theluji.

[If I had not lived in Chicago, I would not have seen snow.]

4. Nisingalisoma Kiswahili nisingalienda Kenya.

[If I had not studied Kiswahili, I would not have gone to Kenya.]

5. Unsingaliona televisheni usingalilala mapema.

[If I had not watched television, I would not have gone to sleep early.]

6. Nisingalicheza nisingalichoka.

[If I had not played, I would not have been tired.]

7. Nisingaliishi Kentucky nisingalikula Kentucky Fried Chicken.

[If I had not lived in Kentucky, I would not have eaten Kentucky Fried Chicken.]



# Lesson 40:

## Locatives: KU-KU, PA-PA, MU-MU

### Locatives [mahali]

Location is expressed by the following:

- A). KU-KU (general location)
- B). PA-PA (specific location)
- C). MU-MU (inside)

Location can be expressed in various ways:

- D). Locatives and Noun Classes
- E). Locatives and Personal Pronouns

### A). KU-KU (KO-KO)

- This class is characterized by the class prefix **-KU-**. It indicates a movement from one place to another or an **indefinite/general position**.
- This class does not comprise any noun, but is attested by two grammatical categories:
  - 1. **demonstratives** (e.g. huku, huko and kule)
  - 2. **infinitives** (e.g. kula, kusoma, kuishi, kufa, kuimba, kulala, kucheza, kufunga, etc.)
- This class uses the connective **KWA**.

Sentensi:

- |                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <b>Huku</b> kunapendeza.    | [This side is good.]       |
| 2. <b>Huko</b> kunavutia.      | [That side is attractive.] |
| 3. <b>Kule</b> kumeharibika.   | [Over there is destroyed.] |
| 4. <b>Kufa</b> kunaogofya.     | [Death is scary.]          |
| 5. <b>Kutembea</b> kunachosha. | [Walking is tiring.]       |
| 6. <b>Kusoma</b> kunafaidi.    | [Studying is beneficial.]  |

## B). PA-PA (PO-PO)

- This class is characterized by the class prefix **-PA-**. It indicates a **definite/specific position**.
- This class has only one noun: **mahali** (or **mahala** or **pahali**), a word which means: **a place**.
- This class is especially present in the class agreements which it involves, often even in the absence of the noun "**mahali**".
- It is attested by the demonstratives **hapa**, **hapo**, and **pale**.
- This class uses the connective **PA**.

Sentensi:

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <b>Hapa</b> panapendeza.  | [Here is likeable.]        |
| 2. <b>Hapo</b> panavutia.    | [There is attractive.]     |
| 3. <b>Pale</b> pameharibika. | [Over there is destroyed.] |

## C). MU-MU (MO-MO)

- This class is characterized by the class prefix **-M-** or **-MW-**. It indicates a **position inside a place**.
- It is attested by the demonstratives **humu**, **humo**, **mle** (**mule**).
- This class uses the connective **MWA**.

Sentensi:

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Humu</b> ni mzuri. | [This (inside) area is good.]           |
| 2. <b>Humo</b> ni mbaya. | [That (inside) area is bad.]            |
| 3. <b>Mle</b> ni mkubwa. | [That (inside) area over there is big.] |

## D). Locatives and Noun Classes

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	KIASHIRIA [demonstrative]	LOCATIVES		
			KO	PO	MO
<b>M</b>	mtu	huyu	yuko	yupo	yumo
<b>WA</b>	watu	hawa	wako	wapo	wamo
<b>KI</b>	kichwa	hiki	kiko	kipo	kimo
<b>VI</b>	vichwa	hivi	viko	vipo	vimo
<b>M</b>	mkono	huu	uko	upo	umo
<b>MI</b>	mikono	hii	iko	ipo	imo
<b>JI</b>	jani	hili	liko	lipo	limo
<b>MA</b>	majani	haya	yako	yapo	yamo
<b>N</b>	nyota	hii	iko	ipo	imo
<b>N</b>	nyota	hizi	ziko	zipo	zimo
<b>U</b>	ukuta	huu	uko	upo	umo
<b>ZI</b>	kuta	hizi	ziko	zipo	zimo
<b>U</b>	ulevi	huu	uko	upo	umo
<b>U</b>	ulevi	huu	uko	upo	umo
<b>KU</b>	kusoma	huku	kuko	kupo	kumo
<b>KU</b>	kusoma	huku	kuko	kupo	kumo
<b>PA</b>	pahali	hapa	pako	papo	pamo
<b>PA</b>	pahali	hapa	pako	papo	pamo
<b>MU</b>	mfukoni	humu			mumo
<b>MU</b>	mfukoni	humu	* *	* *	mumo

## E). Locatives and Personal Pronouns

	<b>KO</b>	<b>PO</b>	<b>MO</b>
<b>Mimi</b>	niko	nipo	nimo
<b>Sisi</b>	tuko	tupo	tumo
<b>Wewe</b>	uko	upo	umo
<b>Ninyi</b>	mko	mpo	mumo
<b>Yeye</b>	yuko	yupo	yumo
<b>Wao</b>	wako	wapo	wamo

### Sentensi:

- |                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi <b>niko</b> nyumbani.    | [I am at home.]                 |
| 2. Sisi <b>tupo</b> garini.      | [We are in the car.]            |
| 3. Wewe <b>uko</b> wapi?         | [Where are you?]                |
| 4. Nyinyi <b>mumo</b> maktabani? | [Are you (pl.) in the library?] |
| 5. Yeye <b>yupo</b> bwenini.     | [She is in the dorm.]           |
| 6. Wao <b>wako</b> nyumbani.     | [They are at home.]             |

# Lesson 41:

## Compass

### Compass [dira]

#### A). Vocabulary

dira	[compass]
mashariki / matlai	[east]
magharibi	[west]
kaskazini / utosi wa dira / shimali	[north]
kusini / suheli	[south]
kaskazini mashariki	[northeast]
kaskazini magharibi	[northwest]
kusini mashariki	[southeast]
kusini magharibi	[southwest]
mashariki ya kati	[middle east]
Afrika ya mashariki	[East Africa]
Afrika ya magharibi	[West Africa]
Afrika ya kaskazini	[North Africa]
Afrika ya kusini; Afrika kusini	[South Africa]
Afrika ya kati	[Central Africa]
pwani	[coast]
magharibi ya kati	[Midwest]
pwani ya magharibi	[West Coast]
pwani ya mashariki	[East Coast]
majimbo ya kusini	[Southern states]

#### B). Other Directional Vocabulary

kucha / kupambazuka / mawio / mashariki	[sunrise]
kuchwa / kutwa / machweo / machwa / magharibi	[sunset]

Zingatia [note]	
sehemu	[part; side]
kati; katikati	[middle; center]
kushoto	[left]
kulia	[right]

Question Formation	
Mifano:	
<b>1. Unatoka sehemu gani Marekani?</b> [Which part of the U.S. do you come from?]	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(Mimi) Ninatoka sehemu ya magharibi ya kati. [I come from the midwest part.]</li> <li>(Mimi) Ninatoka magharibi ya kati. [I come from the midwest.]</li> </ul>	
<b>2. Unaishi sehemu gani (ya) Kansas?</b> [In which part of Kansas do you live?]	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(Mimi) Ninaishi sehemu ya mashariki. [I live on the east side.]</li> <li>Ninaishi mashariki. [I live in the east.]</li> </ul>	
<b>3. Unatoka sehemu gani Kenya?</b> [From which part of Kenya do you come?]	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(Mimi) Ninatoka sehemu ya kusini. [I come from the southern part.]</li> <li>Ninatoka kusini. [I come from the south.]</li> </ul>	
<b>4. Unakaa / Unaishi sehemu gani ya Afrika?</b> [In which part of Africa do you stay / live?]	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(Mimi) Ninakaa sehemu ya Afrika ya mashariki. [I live in East Africa.]</li> <li>Ninakaa Afrika ya Mashariki. [I stay in East Africa.]</li> </ul>	

# Lesson 42:

## Demonstratives

### Demonstratives [vivumishi viashiria]

There are three kinds of demonstratives in Kiswahili:

- Near [karibu]
- Far [mbali]
- Farther [mbali zaidi]

### A). Demonstratives

NGELI	JINA	karibu [near]	mbali [far]	mbali zaidi [farther]
M	mzee	<b>huyu</b>	huyo	yule
WA	wazee	<b>hawa</b>	hao	wale
KI	kisima	<b>hiki</b>	hicho	kile
VI	visima	<b>hivi</b>	hivyo	vile
M	mkono	<b>huu</b>	huo	ule
MI	mikono	<b>hii</b>	hiyo	ile
JI	gari	<b>hili</b>	hilo	lile
MA	magari	<b>haya</b>	hayo	yale
N	saa	<b>hii</b>	hiyo	ile
N	saa	<b>hizi</b>	hizo	zile
U	wakati	<b>huu</b>	huo	ule
ZI	nyakati	<b>hizi</b>	hizo	zile
U	ulevi	<b>huu</b>	huo	ule
U	ulevi	<b>huu</b>	huo	ule
KU	kusoma	<b>huku</b>	huko	kule
KU	kusoma	<b>huku</b>	huko	kule
PA	pahali	<b>hapa</b>	hapo	pale
PA	pahali	<b>hapa</b>	hapo	pale
MU	shambani	<b>humu</b>	humo	mle
MU	shambani	<b>humu</b>	humo	mle

# Sentence Formation

Mifano:

## 1. M-WA

Mwanafunzi <b>huyu</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[This student is bad.]
Mwanafunzi <b>huyo</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[That student is bad.]
Mwanafunzi <b>yule</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[That student over there is bad.]
Wanafunzi <b>hawa</b> ni <b>wabaya</b> .	[These students are bad.]
Wanafunzi <b>hao</b> ni <b>wabaya</b> .	[Those students are bad.]
Wanafunzi <b>wale</b> ni <b>wabaya</b> .	[Those students over there are bad.]

## 2. KI-VI

Kiti <b>hiki</b> ni <b>kizuri</b> .	[This chair is good.]
Kiti <b>hicho</b> ni <b>kizuri</b> .	[That chair is good.]
Kiti <b>kile</b> ni <b>kizuri</b> .	[That chair over there is good.]
Viti <b>hivi</b> ni <b>vizuri</b> .	[These chairs are good.]
Viti <b>hivyo</b> ni <b>vizuri</b> .	[Those chairs are good.]
Viti <b>vile</b> ni <b>vizuri</b> .	[Those chairs over there are good.]

## 3. M-MI

Mkono <b>huu</b> ni <b>mrefu</b> .	[This arm is long.]
Mkono <b>huo</b> ni <b>mrefu</b> .	[That arm is long.]
Mkono <b>ule</b> ni <b>mrefu</b> .	[That arm over there is long.]
Mikono <b>hii</b> ni <b>mirefu</b> .	[These arms are long.]
Mikono <b>hiyo</b> ni <b>mirefu</b> .	[Those arms are long.]
Mikono <b>ile</b> ni <b>mirefu</b> .	[Those arms over there are long.]



#### 4. JI-MA

Gari <b>hili</b> ni dogo.	[This car is small.]
Gari <b>hilo</b> ni dogo.	[That car is small.]
Gari <b>lile</b> ni dogo.	[That car over there is small.]
Magari <b>haya</b> ni <b>madogo</b> .	[These cars are small.]
Magari <b>hayo</b> ni <b>madogo</b> .	[Those cars are small.]
Magari <b>yale</b> ni <b>madogo</b> .	[Those cars over there are small.]

#### 5. N-N

Kalamu <b>hii</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[This pen is bad.]
Kalamu <b>hiyo</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[That pen is bad.]
Kalamu <b>ile</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[Those pens over there are bad.]
Kalamu <b>hizi</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[These pens are bad.]
Kalamu <b>hizo</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[Those pens are bad.]
Kalamu <b>zile</b> ni <b>mbaya</b> .	[Those pens over there are bad.]

#### 6. U-U/U-ZI

Unywele <b>huu</b> ni <b>mrefu</b> .	[This hair (sg.) is long.]
Unywele <b>huo</b> ni <b>mrefu</b> .	[That hair (sg.) is long.]
Unywele <b>ule</b> ni <b>mrefu</b> .	[That hair over there is long.]
Nywele <b>hizi</b> ni <b>ndefu</b> .	[This hair (pl.) is long.]
Nywele <b>hizo</b> ni <b>ndefu</b> .	[That hair (pl.) is long.]
Nywele <b>zile</b> ni <b>ndefu</b> .	[That hair (pl.) over there is long.]
Uji <b>huu</b> ni <b>mwingi</b> .	[This porridge is a lot.]
Uji <b>huo</b> ni <b>mwingi</b> .	[That porridge is a lot.]
Uji <b>ule</b> ni <b>mwingi</b> .	[That porridge over there is a lot.]

## 7. KU-KU

Kuimba **huku** ni **kwingi**.

[This singing is a lot.]

Kuimba **huko** ni **kwingi**.

[That singing is a lot.]

Kuimba **kule** ni **kwingi**.

[That singing over there is a lot.]

## 8. PA-PA

Pahali **hapa** ni **pakubwa**.

[This place is big.]

Pahali **hapo** ni **pakubwa**.

[That place is big.]

Pahali **pale** ni **pakubwa**.

[That place over there is big.]

## 9. MU-MU

Nyumbani **humu** ni **mdogo**.

[This inside part of the house is small.]

Nyumbani **humo** ni **mdogo**.

[That inside part of the house is small.]

Nyumbani **mle** ni **mdogo**.

[That inside part of the house over there is small.]

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

1. Chakula **hiki** ni kizuri.

[This food is good.]

2. Tunda **hili** ni dogo.

[This fruit is small.]

3. Nyumba **hii** ni kubwa.

[This house is big.]

4. Rafiki **huyu** ni mzuri.

[This friend is good.]

5. Vinywaji **hivi** ni virefu.

[These drinks are tall.]

6. Unywele **huu** ni mrefu.

[This hair is long.]

7. Kucheza **huku** ni kubaya.

[This way/manner of playing is bad.]

**8.** Darasani **humu** ni mdogo.

[Inside this classroom is small.]

**9.** Wanafunzi **hawa** ni walevi.

[These students are drunkards.]

**10.** Kiatu **hiki** ni kifupi.

[This shoe is short.]

**11.** Vyuo **hivi** ni vikubwa.

[These colleges are big.]

# Lesson 43:

## Commands

### Commands [amri]

**A).** Commands using **regular verbs** (which generally end in -A) when indicating a single recipient will take the normal verb form, but commands indicating multiple recipients take the **-ENI** suffix, which is added after removing the final vowel **-A**.

(Mfano: Soma! → Someni!)

**B).** Commands using **borrowed verbs** (which in most cases do not end with -A) add the suffix **-NI** to the verb regardless of the number of recipients.

(Mfano: Jaribu! → Jaribuni!)

**C).** In Kiswahili, imperatives or commands are expressed in two ways:

- 1) **the direct, simple imperative;** and
- 2) **the polite imperative.**

**D).** Commands may take object markers to indicate the recipient of a command  
Zingatia [note]: No tense is usually indicated in Kiswahili commands.

### A). Commands using Regular Kiswahili verbs

- When stating plural forms of commands with regular verbs, **-A** is removed and **-ENI** is added

Umoja [singular]	Wingi [plural]	Meaning
Fanya!	Fanyeni!	Do!
Funga!	Fungeni!	Close!
Fungua!	Fungueni!	Open!
Kamata!	Kamateni!	Catch!
Ngoja!	Ngojeni!	Wait!
Cheza!	Chezeni!	Play!
Ona!	Oneni!	Observe!
Imba!	Imbeni!	Sing!
Safisha! / Osha!	Safisheni! Osheni!	Clean!

Sikia!  
Soma!  
Penda!  
Cheka!  
Lia!  
Pika!  
Keti/Kaa!  
Simama!  
Nyamaza!  
Andika!  
Ondoka!  
Kunywa!  
Kula!  
Sema!  
Zungumza!  
Nenda/Enda!  
Kimbia!  
Ruka!  
Lala!  
Leta!  
Peleka!  
Angalia!  
Ambia!  
Anza!  
Maliza!  
Fika!  
Ingia!  
Soma kitabu!  
Piga simu!  
Fungua kitabu!  
Funga kitabu!  
Enda!  
Fundisha! / Funza!  
Toka!  
Tembea!  
Ongea!  
Angalia!  
Tazama!  
Sahau!  
Anguka!  
Funza!  
Osha!

Sikieni!  
Someni!  
Pendeni!  
Chekeni!  
Lieni!  
Pikeni!  
Ketini/Kaeni!  
Simameni!  
Nyamazeni!  
Andikeni!  
Ondokeni!  
Kunyweni!  
Kuleni!  
Semeni!  
Zungumzeni!  
Nendeni/Endeni!  
Kimbieni!  
Rukeni!  
Laleni!  
Leteni!  
Pelekeni!  
Angalieni!  
Ambieni!  
Anzeni!  
Malizeni!  
Fikeni!  
Ingieni!  
Someni kitabu!  
Pigeni simu!  
Fungueni kitabu!  
Fungeni kitabu!  
Endeni!  
Fundisheni! / Funzeni!  
Tokeni!  
Tembeeni!  
Ongeeni!  
Angalieni!  
Tazameni!  
Sahauni!  
Angukeni!  
Funzeni!  
Osheni!

Hear!  
Read! / Learn!  
Like!  
Smile! / Laugh!  
Cry!  
Cook!  
Sit/live/stay!  
Stand!  
Be quiet!  
Write!  
Leave!  
Drink!  
Eat!  
Say! / Speak!  
Say! / Speak!  
Go!  
Run!  
Jump!  
Sleep!  
Bring!  
Take!  
Look! / Watch!  
Tell!  
Start!  
Finish!  
Arrive!  
Enter!  
Read a book!  
Make a phone call!  
Open the book!  
Close the book!  
Go!  
Teach!  
Leave!  
Walk!  
Speak! / Talk!  
Look! / Watch!  
Look! / Examine!  
Forget!  
Fall!  
Teach!  
Clean!

## B). Commands using Irregular (borrowed) verbs

- When stating plural forms of commands with irregular verbs, the suffix **-NI** is added
- Whereas most Kiswahili verbs will end with **-A**, some borrowed verbs (e.g. from Arabic) *do not* follow that rule. In this case, the stem of such verbs is used to construct the singular form of the imperative, while the plural suffix **-NI** is added to the stem of the verb without modifying the final vowel **-E, -I, -O, or -U**.

Umoja [singular]	Wingi [plural]	Meaning
Karibu!	Karibuni!	Welcome!
Rudi!	Rudini!	Come back!
Jaribu!	Jaribuni!	Try!
Haribu!	Haribuni!	Destroy! / Spoil!
Jibu!	Jibuni!	Answer!
Nipe!	Nipeni!	Give me!
Niambie!	Niambieni!	Tell me!
Njoo!	Njooni!	Come!
Njoo hapa!	Njooni hapa!	Come here!
Sahau!	Sahauni	Forget!

## C). The Polite Imperative

- Instructions can also be given in a form of **suggestion**, in which case the verb takes a different form.

Umoja [singular]	Wingi [plural]	Meaning
Usume kitabu!	Msume kitabu!	You (should) read a book!
Upige simu!	Mpige simu!	You (should) call!
Ujaribu!	Mjaribu!	You (should) try!
Urudi!	Mrudi!	You (should) come back!
Usamehe!	Msamehe!	You (should) forgive!

## D). Commands with Object Markers

Umoja [singular]		Wingi [plural]	
Nipe!	Give <b>me</b> !	Nipeni!	(You all) give <b>me</b> !
Mpe!	Give <b>him/her</b> !	Mpeni!	(You all) give <b>him/her</b> !
Tupe!	Give <b>us</b> !	Tupeni!	(You all) give <b>us</b> !
Wape!	Give <b>them</b> !	Wapeni!	(You all) give <b>them</b> !

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

**1. Tafadhali leta vitabu!**

[Please bring the books!]

**2. Tafadhali leteni vitabu!**

[(You all) Please bring the books!]

**3. Tafadhali enda nyumbani.**

[Please go home!]

**4. Tafadhali endeni nyumbani.**

[(You all) Please go home!]

**5. Tafadhali kaa / keti!**

[Please stay / sit!]

**6. Tafadhali ketini!**

[(You all) Please sit!]

**7. Tafadhali kula!**

[Please eat!]

**8. Tafadhali kuleni!**

[(You all) Please eat!]

**9. Tafadhali nyamaza!**

[Please be quiet!]

**10. Tafadhali nyamazeni!**

[(You all) Please be quiet!]

**11. Tafadhali kunywa maji / pombe / jusi!**

[Please drink water / alcohol / juice!]

**12. Tafadhali kunyweni maji / pombe / jusi!**

[(You all) Please drink water / alcohol / juice!]

**13. Tafadhali njoo hapa!**

Please come here!

**14. Tafadhali njooni hapa!**

[(You all) Please come here!]

**15. Tafadhali zungumza polepole!**

[Please speak slowly!]

**16. Tafadhali zungumzeni polepole!**

[(You all) Please speak slowly!]

**17.** Tafadhali zungumza haraka haraka!

[Please speak fast!]

**18.** Tafadhali zungumzeni haraka haraka!

[(You all) Please speak fast!]

**19.** Tafadhali enda dukani / sokoni!

[Please go to the store / market!]

**20.** Tafadhali endeni dukani / sokoni!

[(You all) Please go to the store / market!]

**21.** Tafadhali enda chumba cha mazoezi / kanisani / maktabani!

[Please go to the gym / church / library!]

**22.** Tafadhali endeni chumba cha mazoezi / kanisani / maktabani!

[(You all) Please go to the gym / church / library!]



# Lesson 44:

## Prepositions

### Prepositions [vihusishi]

#### A). Prepositions

kabla ya	[before]
baada ya	[after]
nje ya	[outside of]
ndani ya	[inside; in]
juu ya	[on top of; about]
chini ya	[under; below]
baina ya	[between]
kati ya	[between; in the middle of; among]
mbele ya	[in front of]
nyuma ya	[behind]
karibu na	[near; close]
mbali na	[far from; far]
kando ya	[beside; along]
mpaka; hadi	[until; 'til]
kisha	[then; and then]
tangu; toka	[from; since]
katika	[in; inside; on]
miongoni mwa	[among]
toka; kutoka	[from]
katikati ya	[in between]
usoni pa	[in the face of; in front of ]
ukingoni mwa	[at the edge / bank of]
mvunguni mwa	[under; beneath]
pembeni mwa	[in the corner of]
ubavuni pa	[at the side of; beside]
machoni pa	[in front of/ near]
kisogoni pa	[behind, at the back]

# Sentence Formation

Mifano:

## 1. kabla ya [before]

- a). Nitaenda maktabani kabla ya kuenda mkahawani.  
[I will go to the library before going to the restaurant.]
- b). Kabla ya kuimba nitakunywa chai.  
[Before singing, I will drink tea.]

## 2. baada ya [after]

- a). Baada ya darasa nitasoma.  
[After class I will study.]
- b). Mimi hustarehe baada ya kusafiri.  
[I rest after traveling.]

## 3. nje ya [outside of]

- a). Niko nje ya nyumba.  
[I am outside of the house.]
- b). Ninapenda kula nje ya mkahawa.  
[I like to eat outside of the restaurant.]

## 4. ndani ya [inside; in]

- a). Chakula kiko ndani ya friji.  
[Food is in the fridge.]
- b). Mimi huandika sana ndani ya darasa la Kiswahili.  
[I write a lot in Swahili class.]

## 5. juu ya [on top of; about]

- a). Unasema juu ya nini?  
[What are you talking about?]
- b). Miti ilianguka juu ya nyumba.  
[Trees fell on the houses.]

## **6. chini ya [under; below]**

- a).** Viatu vyangu viko chini ya koti langu.  
[My shoes are under my coat.]
- b).** Ninapenda kulala chini ya miti.  
[I like to sleep under the trees.]

## **7. baina ya [between; in between]**

- a).** Ninasoma kitabu baina ya Jake na Bill.  
[I am reading a book between Jake and Bill.]
- b).** Baina ya madarasa mimi husoma sana.  
[In between classes I study a lot.]

## **8. kati ya [between; in the middle of; among]**

- a).** Peter anakaa kati ya Mike na John.  
[Peter is sitting between Mike and John.]
- b).** Mimi hukunywa bia kati ya Ijumaa na Jumapili.  
[I drink beer between Friday and Sunday.]

## **9. mbele ya [in front of]**

- a).** Mwalimu ako mbele ya wanafunzi.  
[The teacher is in front of the students.]
- b).** Vitabu vipo mbele ya dirisha.  
[The books are in front of the window.]

## **10. nyuma ya [behind]**

- a).** Ua uko nyuma ya nyumba.  
[The yard is behind the house.]
- b).** Paka analala nyuma ya kochi.  
[The cat is sleeping behind the couch.]

## **11. karibu na [near; close]**

- a).** Ninaishi karibu na McDonald's.  
[I live near McDonald's.]
- b).** Nitakula karibu na rafiki zangu.  
[I will eat near my friends.]

## 12. mbali na [far from; far]

- a). Nitasafiri mbali na Amerika.  
[I will travel far from America.]
- b). Nyumba yako iko mbali na pwani.  
[Your house is far from the coast.]

## 13. kando ya [beside; along]

- a). Samantha alilala kando ya mbwa.  
[Samantha slept beside the dog.]
- b). Mti uko kando ya ziwa.  
[The tree is along the lake.]

## 14. mpaka; hadi [until; til]

- a). Nitasoma kutoka saa nne hadi saa tano asubuhi.  
[I will study from 10am until 11am.]
- b). Nilikimbia tangu saa nane hadi saa tisa mchana nilikimbia.  
[I ran from 2pm until 3pm.]

## 15. kisha [then; and then]

- a). Ninaenda sokoni kisha nitarudi nyumbani.  
[I am going to the market and then I will return home.]
- b). Nilikimbia kisha nilioga bafuni.  
[I ran and then I showered.]

## 16. tangu; toka [from; since]

- a). Nilisoma Kiswahili tangu saa mbili hadi saa tano asubuhi.  
[I studied Kiswahili from 8am until 11am.]
- b). Yeye atakaa hotelini toka Jumanne mpaka Ijumaa.  
[He will stay at the hotel from Tuesday until Friday.]

## 17. katika [in; inside; on]

- a). Tunazungumza katika Kiswahili.  
[We are speaking in Kiswahili.]
- b). Ninakaa katika nyumba hii.  
[I live in this house.]

## **18. miongoni mwa [among]**

- a).** Anakaa miongoni mwa watoto wengi.  
[He/She is sitting among many children.]
- b).** Mtoto anaimba minogoni mwa wazee.  
[The child is singing among the elders.]

## **19. toka; kutoka [from]**

- a).** Yeye anatoka Kenya.  
[He comes from Kenya.]
- b).** Alichukua peremende kutoka kwa mtoto.  
[He took the candy from the child.]

## **20. katikati ya [in between]**

- a).** Ninaishi katikati ya Lawrence na Wichita.  
[I live in between Lawrence and Wichita.]
- b).** Kuna watoto katikati ya wazee.  
[There are children in between the elderly people.]

## **21. usoni pa [in the face of; in front of ]**

- a).** Anaishi usoni pa duka.  
[He/She lives in front the store.]
- b).** Amesimama usoni pa baba.  
[He/She is standing in front of the father.]

## **22. ukingoni mwa [at the edge / bank of]**

- a).** Kuna wavuvi ukingoni mwa ziwa.  
[There are fishermen at the edge / bank of the lake.]
- b).** Tunaishi ukingoni mwa mto.  
[We live at the edge / bank of the river.]

## **23. mvunguni mwa [under; beneath]**

- a).** Kuna chakula mvunguni mwa kitanda.  
[There is food under the bed.]
- b).** Kuna kitabu mvunguni mwa kitanda.  
[There is a book under the bed.]

## **24. pembeni mwa [in the corner of]**

- a).** Ameweka vitabu pembeni mwa darasa.  
[She put books in the corner of the class.]
- b).** Anakaa pembeni mwa darasa.  
[He/She is sitting in the corner of the class.]

## **25. ubavuni pa [at the side of; beside]**

- a).** Mtoto amekaa ubavuni pa mama.  
[The child is sitting at the mother's side.]
- b).** Nilikaa ubavuni pa Padre kanisani.  
[I sat at the side of / beside the priest at church.]

## **26. machoni pa [in front of/ near]**

- a).** Mwalimu anasimama machoni pa wanafunzi.  
[The teacher is standing in front of the students.]
- b).** Televisheni iko machoni pa sebule.  
[The television is in the front of the sitting / living room.]

## **27. kisogoni pa [behind, at the back]**

- a).** Wanafunzi wanaishi kisogoni pa duka.  
[The students live behind the store.]
- b).** Nimeweka gari langu kisogoni pa nyumba.  
[I have put my car behind / at the back of the house.]

# Lesson 45:

## Possessive Pronouns

### Possessive Pronouns [vivumishi vimilikishi]

There are three possessive pronouns in Swahili:

- First person possessive (e.g. my, our)
- Second person possessive (e.g. your)
- Third person possessive (e.g. his/her, their)

Each possessive pronoun has a singular and a plural form. This pronoun must agree with the noun class it represents:

1. All nouns that start with **M-WA** take the **W-** prefix, and those that do not change in singular and plural form in the same class.  
(e.g. samaki, ndege, simba, paka, etc)
  - Mifano: mwalimu **wangu**, mwanafunzi **wangu**, watoto **wangu**, walimu **wangu**.
2. All professions take the **W-** prefix.
  - Mifano: nesi **wangu**, daktari **wangu**.
3. Most family names will take a **Y-** prefix for singular, and **Z-** prefix for plural.
  - Mifano: kaka **yangu**/kaka **zangu**, dada **yangu**/dada **zangu**, mama **yangu**/mama **zangu**, shangazi **yangu**/shangazi **zangu**, rafiki **yangu**/rafiki **zangu**.

### Muhtasari [Summary]

1 <sup>st</sup> Person Singular: <b>-ANGU</b> [My]	1 <sup>st</sup> Person Plural: <b>-ETU</b> [Our]
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person Singular: <b>-AKO</b> [Your]	2 <sup>nd</sup> Person Plural: <b>-ENU</b> [Your (pl.)]
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person Singular: <b>-AKE</b> [His/Her]	3 <sup>rd</sup> Person Plural: <b>-AO</b> [Their]

## A). Possessive Pronouns

### First Person:

1. Umoja [singular]  
-ANGU [my]

Mifano:

Mwalimu wangu [My teacher]  
Walimu wangu [My teachers]

2. Wingi [plural]  
-ETU [our]

Mwalimu wetu [Our teacher]  
Walimu wetu [Our teachers]

### Second Person:

1. Umoja [singular]  
-AKO [your]

Mifano:

Kalamu yako [Your pen]  
Kalamu zako [Your pens]

2. Wingi [plural]  
-ENU [your (pl.)]

Kalamu yenu [Your (pl.) pen]  
Kalamu zenu [Your (pl.) pens]

### Third Person:

1. Umoja [singular]  
-AKE [his/her]

Mifano:

Jina lake [His/her name]  
Majina yake [His/her names]

2. Wingi [plural]  
-AO [their]

Jina lao [Their name]  
Majina yao [Their names]

### Zingatia [Note]

-angu	[my]
-ako	[your]
-ake	[his/her]
jina	[name]
langu	[my]
lako	[your]
lake	[his/her]
Nani?	[Who?]
ni	[is]



## Question Formation

Mifano:

### 1. Jina langu ni nani?

[What is my name?]

Jina laku ni Peter.

[Your name is Peter.]

### 2. Jina laku ni nani?

[What is your name?]

Jina langu ni Darnell.

[My name is Darnell.]

### 3. Jina lake ni nani?

[What is his/her name?]

Jina lake ni Darnell.

[His/her name is Darnell.]

### 4. Jina laku ni nani mama/mwalimu?

[What is your name, mom/teacher?]

Jina langu ni Joan.

[My name is Joan.]

## B). Possessive Pronouns with the Noun Classes

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	First Person (singular/plural)	Second Person (singular/plural)	Third Person (singular/plural)
M	mtoto	wangu/wetu yangu / zangu	wako/wenu	wake/wao
Wa	watoto	wangu/wetu	wako/wenu	wake/wao
KI	kitabu	changu/chetu	chako/chenu	chake/chao
VI	vitabu	vyangu/vyetu	vyako/vyenu	vyake/vyao
M	mti	wangu/wetu	wako/wenu	wake/wao
MI	miti	yangu/yetu	yako/yenu	yake/yao
JI	gari	langu/letu	lako/lenu	lake/lao
MA	magari	yangu/yetu	yako/yenu	yake/yao
N	kalamu	yangu/yetu	yako/yenu	yake/yao
N	kalamu	zangu/zetu	zako/zenu	zake/zao
U	ufunguo	wangu/wetu	wako/wenu	wake/wao
U	funguo	zangu/zetu	zako/zenu	zake/zao
U	ugonjwa	wangu/wetu	wako/wenu	wake/wao
U	ugonjwa	wangu/wetu	wako/wenu	wake/wao
KU	kula	kwangu/kwetu	kwako/kwenu	kwake/kwao
KU	kula	kwangu/kwetu	kwako/kwenu	kwake/kwao
PA	pahali	pangu/petu	pako/penu	pake/pao
PA	pahali	pangu/petu	pako/penu	pake/pao
MU	shimoni	mwangu/mwetu	mwako/mwenu	mwake/mwao
MU	shimoni	mwangu/mwetu	mwako/mwenu	mwake/mwao

### Sentence Formation

Mifano:

**1. Mgeni wangu** amefika  
Wageni **wetu** wamefika.

[**My** guest has arrived.]  
[**Our** guests have arrived.]

**2. Mgeni wako** amefika.  
Wageni **wenu** wamefika.

[**Your** guest has arrived.]  
[**Your** (pl.) guests have arrived.]

**3. Mgeni wake** amefika.  
Wageni **wao** wamefika.

[**His/Her** guest has arrived.]  
[**Their** guests have arrived.]

Mifano zaidi:	
<b>4.</b> Gari <b>langu</b> limeharibika. Magari <b>yetu</b> yameharibika.	[ <b>My</b> car has broken down.] [ <b>Our</b> cars have broken down.]
<b>5.</b> Gari <b>lako</b> limeharibika. Magari <b>yenu</b> yameharibika.	[ <b>Your</b> car has broken down.] [ <b>Your</b> (pl.) cars have broken down.]
<b>6.</b> Gari <b>lake</b> limeharibika. Magari <b>yao</b> yameharibika	[ <b>His/Her</b> car has broken down.] [ <b>Their</b> cars have broken down.]
<b>7.</b> Nyumba <b>yangu</b> iko mjini. Nyumba <b>zangu</b> ziko mjini. Nyumba <b>yetu</b> iko mjini. Nyumba <b>zetu</b> ziko mjini.	[ <b>My</b> house is in the city.] [ <b>My</b> houses are in the city.] [ <b>Our</b> house is in the city.] [ <b>Our</b> houses are in the city.]
<b>8.</b> Nyumba <b>yako</b> iko mjini. Nyumba <b>zako</b> ziko mjini. Nyumba <b>yenu</b> iko mjini. Nyumba <b>zenu</b> ziko mjini.	[ <b>Your</b> house is in the city.] [ <b>Your</b> houses are in the city.] [ <b>Your</b> (pl.) house is in the city.] [ <b>Your</b> (pl.) houses are in the city.]
<b>9.</b> Nyumba <b>yake</b> iko mjini. Nyumba <b>zake</b> ziko mjini. Nyumba <b>yao</b> iko mjini. Nyumba <b>zao</b> ziko mjini.	[ <b>His/Her</b> house is in the city.] [ <b>His/Her</b> houses are in the city.] [ <b>Their</b> house is in the city.] [ <b>Their</b> houses are in the city.]

# Lesson 46:

## Reversives

### Reversives [vinyume]

The opposite of any given noun refers to its other side. It is different from negation.

There are **three ways of showing the opposite** of a given word:

1. *Utanzu wa pindu*  
[direct antonyms]
2. *Utanzu wa kufanyua au kulinyambua neno*  
[reversed meaning of a given verb]
3. *Utanzu wa jinsia*  
[gender - masculine/feminine]

### A). Utanzu wa pindu [direct antonyms]

1. moto	[hot]	baridi	[cold]
2. refu	[tall]	fupi	[short]
3. keti	[sit]	simama	[stand]
4. njoo	[come here]	nenda	[go]
5. amani	[peace]	vita	[war]
6. elimu / akili	[education]	ujinga	[ignorance]
7. bara	[mainland]	bahari	[ocean]
8. haba / chache	[few; scarce]	tele; nyingi	[plenty; many]
9. mkwasi / tajiri	[rich man]	mkata	[pauper; poor man]
10. baraka	[blessings]	laana	[curse]
11. ndoa	[marriage]	talaka	[divorce]
12. unyama	[brutality]	utu	[humanity; kindness]
13. uhuru	[freedom]	utumwa	[slavery]
14. ardhi	[earth]	mbingu	[heaven]
15. jumla	[wholesale]	rejareja	[retail]
16. juu	[up]	chini	[down]
17. lala	[sleep]	amka	[wake up]
18. kale / zamani	[past]	sasa	[present; now]
19. sahau	[forget]	kumbuka	[remember]

<b>20.</b> konda	[become thin]	nenepa	[grow fat]
<b>21.</b> baada ya	[after]	kabla ya	[before]
<b>22.</b> mbele ya	[in front of]	nyuma ya	[behind of]
<b>23.</b> juu ya	[on top of]	chini ya	[under]
<b>24.</b> karibu na	[near]	mbali na	[far]
<b>25.</b> jana	[yesterday]	leo	[today]
<b>26.</b> usiku	[night]	mchana	[day]
<b>27.</b> ndani ya	[inside of]	nje ya	[outside of]
<b>28.</b> baya	[bad]	zuri	[good]
<b>29.</b> kubwa	[big]	dogo	[small]
<b>30.</b> shari	[rough]	shwari	[smooth]
<b>31.</b> mwema	[good]	mwovu	[evil]
<b>32.</b> bora	[superior]	duni	[inferior]
<b>33.</b> mwangaza	[light]	giza	[darkness]
<b>34.</b> shibe	[satisfaction]	njaa	[hungry]
<b>35.</b> utii	[respect]	ukaidi/uasi	[disrespect]
<b>36.</b> panda	[climb]	shuka	[alight]
<b>37.</b> vuna	[harvest]	panda	[plant]
<b>38.</b> lazima	[mandatory]	hiari	[optional]
<b>39.</b> hodari	[diligent]	goigoi	[lazy]
<b>40.</b> butu	[blunt]	makali	[sharp]
<b>41.</b> uza	[sell]	nunua	[buy]
<b>42.</b> kufa	[die]	fufuka	[resurrect]
<b>43.</b> zaa	[give birth]	avya	[abort]
<b>44.</b> kemea	[reprimand]	shangilia	[praise]
<b>45.</b> sifu	[praise]	kashifu	[reprimand]

## B). Utanzu wa kufanya au kulinyambua neon [reversed meaning of a given verb]

For verbs which can be reversed in meaning, Kiswahili uses the vowels **-U-** or **-O-** to derive an opposite meaning. When the root vowel of the verb is **a, e, i,** or **u,** then the reverse marker is the vowel **-U-**. When the root vowel is **o,** then the reverse marker is **-O-**.

Reversives imply reversal of an action, and they are one form of opposites in Kiswahili. Logically not all verbs have reversive forms, and indeed, Kiswahili has very few.

Simple Verb		Reverse Meaning	
fuma	[weave]	fumua	[unweave]
choma	[poke in]	chomoa	[pluck out]
fukia	[fill in]	fukua	[dig out (something buried)]

chana	[comb]	chanua	[comb out]
tega	[trap]	tegua	[release]
funga	[close]	fungua	[open]
umba	[give form]	umbua	[take away the form]
zika	[bury]	zikua	[exhume]
ziba	[cork; plug]	zibua	[uncork; unplug]
tata	[tangle]	tatua	[disentangle]
tasa	[perplex]	tasua	[explain]
vaa	[wear]	vua	[undress]
kunja	[fold]	kunjua	[unfold]
shona	[sew]	shonoa	[undo sewing]
kosa	[make a mistake]	kosoa	[correct]
topea	[be inhibited]	topoa	[get out of a difficulty]
tenda	[do an act]	tendua	[undo the act]
ficha	[hide]	fichua	[reveal]
ganda	[stiffen; freeze; fasten]	gandua	[unstiffen; defrost; unfasten]
kaza	[tighten]	kazua	[loosen]
jenga	[construct]	jengua	[demolish]
fumba	[shut (eyes)]	fumbua	[open (eyes)]
pinda	[bend]	pindua	[reverse; capsize]
zinda	[be firm]	zindua	[remove something set firmly]
zima	[repress]	zimua	[reduce the intensity]
panga	[arrange]	pangua	[disarrange]
waza	[think]	wazua	[rethink]
anika	[spread]	anua	[gather]
bana	[fasten]	banua	[unfasten]
kucha	[sunset]	kuchwa	[sunrise]
inama	[bend]	inuka	[straighten]
ita	[call]	itikia	[respond]

#### Sentensi:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>1.</b> Ninafunga mlango.<br>Ninafungua mlango.                 | [I am closing the door.]<br>[I am opening the door.]                                 |
| <b>2.</b> Mama anapanga nguo.<br>Mama anapangua nguo.             | [Mother is arranging the clothes.]<br>[Mother is disarranging the clothes.]          |
| <b>3.</b> Michael amefunika chakula.<br>Michael amefunua chakula. | [Michael has covered the food.]<br>[Michael has uncovered the food.]                 |
| <b>4.</b> Kaka yake anavaa shati.<br>Kaka yake anavua shati.      | [His/Her brother is putting on a shirt.]<br>[His/Her brother is taking off a shirt.] |

**Special note:**

There is a group of verbs which have identical meanings to their reversed representation:

**1. kama/kamua** [squeeze/wring wet clothes; act of milking a cow]

Ali alikamua chungwa.

[Ali squeezed juice out of an orange.]

**2. nyaka/nyankua** [grab; snatch]

Waghana walinyankua uhuru.

[Ghanaians attained (their) independence.]

**3. ganga/gangua** [treat]

Daktari aliganga jeraha la mtoto.

[The doctor treated the child's wound.]

**C). Utanzu wa jinsia [gender - masculine/feminine]**

<b>1. Adam</b>	[Adam]	<b>Hawa</b>	[Eve]
<b>2. kaka</b>	[brother]	<b>dada</b>	[sister]
<b>3. baba</b>	[father]	<b>mama</b>	[mother]
<b>4. babu</b>	[grandfather]	<b>nyanya</b>	[grandmother]
<b>5. bin</b>	[son of]	<b>binti</b>	[daughter of]
<b>6. bwana</b>	[sir; Mr.]	<b>bibi</b>	[Mrs.; Miss; Ms.]
<b>7. mume</b>	[male]	<b>mke</b>	[female]
<b>8. mvulana</b>	[boy]	<b>msichana</b>	[girl]
<b>9. bwanaharusi</b>	[groom]	<b>biharusi</b>	[bride]
<b>10. Amin</b>	[male name]	<b>Amina</b>	[female name]
<b>11. Saidi</b>	[male name]	<b>Saida</b>	[female name]
<b>12. mjomba</b>	[maternal uncle]	<b>shangazi</b>	[paternal aunt]
<b>13. baba wa kambo</b>	[step-father]	<b>mama wa kambo</b>	[step-mother]
<b>14. baba mkubwa</b>	[uncle older than your father]	<b>mama mkubwa</b>	[aunt older than your mother]
<b>15. baba mdogo</b>	[uncle younger than your father]	<b>mama mdogo</b>	[aunt younger than your mother]
<b>16. shemeji</b>	[sister-in-law; brother-in-law]	<b>wifi</b>	[sister-in-law]
<b>17. baba mkwe</b>	[father-in-law]	<b>mama mkwe</b>	[mother-in-law]
<b>18. mtwana</b>	[butler]	<b>yaya</b>	[maid]
<b>19. mwanamke</b>	[woman]	<b>mwanamume</b>	[man]
<b>20. koo</b>	[hen]	<b>jogoo</b>	[rooster]
<b>21. mbarika/ mtamba</b>	[cow]	<b>fahali</b>	[bull]
<b>22. mjakazi</b>	[maid]	<b>mtwana</b>	[butler]
<b>23. mrembo</b>	[beautiful]	<b>mtanashati</b>	[handsome]

<b>24.</b> ajuza	[old woman]	shaibu	[old man]
<b>25.</b> mavyaa	[mother-in-law]	bavyaa	[father-in-law]
<b>26.</b> malkia	[queen]	mfalme	[king]
<b>27.</b> bintimfalme	[princess]	mwanamfalme	[prince]
<b>28.</b> pakajike	[female cat]	shume	[male cat]
<b>29.</b> mwanamwali	[spinster]	mseja	[bachelor]
<b>30.</b> mtawa	[nun]	walii	[monk]

Sentensi zaidi:	
<b>1.</b> Kaka ya Juma ni <b>mrefu</b> . Kaka ya Juma ni <b>mfupi</b> .	[Juma's brother is tall.] [Juma's brother is tall.]
<b>2.</b> Wanafunzi wame <b>keti</b> darasani. Wanafunzi wame <b>simama</b> darasani.	[The students have sat in class.] [The students have stood in class.]
<b>3.</b> Nina nguo <b>nyingi</b> . Nina nguo <b>chache</b> .	[I have many clothes.] [I have few clothes.]
<b>4.</b> Kuna chakula <b>chini</b> ya meza. Kuna chakula <b>juu</b> ya meza.	[There is food under the table.] [There is food on top of the table.]
<b>5.</b> Yeye alizaliwa <b>zamani</b> . Yeye alizaliwa <b>sasa</b> .	[He/She was born a long time ago.] [He/she was born just now.]
<b>6.</b> Ninakumbuka Kiswahili. Nimesahau Kiswahili.	[I remember Kiswahili.] [I have forgotten Kiswahili.]
<b>7.</b> Tutaonana <b>kabla ya</b> darasa. Tutaonana <b>baada ya</b> darasa.	[We will see each other before class.] [We will see each other after class.]
<b>8.</b> <b>Baba</b> ataenda sokoni na <b>kaka</b> . <b>Mama</b> ataenda sokoni na <b>dada</b> .	[Father will go to the market with brother.] [Mother will go to the market with sister.]
<b>9.</b> Huyu ni <b>baba mdogo</b> .  Huyu ni <b>mama mdogo</b> .	[This is the uncle. (father's younger brother)]  [This is the aunt. (mother's younger sister)]



# Lesson 47:

## Sports

### Sports [michezo]

#### A). Sports

besiboli	[baseball]
domino	[dominoes]
hoki / mpira wa magongo	[hockey]
kamari	[gambling]
kandanda / kipute / kambumbu	[soccer (international football)]
karata	[cards (e.g. poker)]
kuinua vyuma	[weightlifting]
mbio	[races]
matembezi	[walking]
kuruka	[jumping]
kuruka maji	[steeplechase]
kuruka viunzi	[decathlon]
mbio za masafa marefu; mbio ndefu	[marathon]
masafa mafupi; mbio fupi	[short races]
kurusha mkuki	[javelin]
kurusha mawe	[shot-put]
mchezo wa vikapu	[basketball]
mpira wa wavu; voliboli	[volleyball]
netiboli	[netball]
tenisi	[tennis]
kriketi	[cricket]
soka	[football (American)]
dondi / ngumi / masumbwi / makonde	[boxing]
karate	[karate]
miereka	[wrestling]
mpira wa mikono	[handball]

raga	[rugby]
gofu	[golf]
sarakasi	[circus]
kwata	[drill]
riadha	[athletics / any sports]
jugwe	[tug of war]
judo	[judo]
tiara / kishada	[kite]
geli	[children's stick game]
kodwa	[small stones used to play mancala]
kibe / kibemasa	[hide and seek]
sataranji	[chess]
bao	[a traditional mancala game]
nage	[Jenga with 7 blocks on each level]

## B). Extra Vocabulary

kunyoosha viungo	[physical exercise]
shindano / mashindano	[competition / competitions]
kushindana	[to compete]
kushinda	[to win]
kushindwa	[to lose]
kucheza	[to play]
kukimbia	[to run]
firimbi	[whistle]
mpira / mipira	[ball / balls]
wavu / nyavu	[net / nets]
mazoezi	[exercises]
uwanja / nyanja	[field / fields]
nyasi	[grass]
mstari / mistari	[line / lines]
muda; wakati; saa	[time]
goli	[goal post]
chumba cha mazoezi	[gym]
shabiki / mashabiki	[fan / fans]
refa / marefa	[referee / referees]
goli; bao	[score]
timu / timu	[team / teams]

## C). Athletes

mchezaji / wachezaji	[player / players]
mshindani / washindani	[competitor / competitors]
mshindi / washindi	[winner / winners]
mwanadondi / wanadondi	[boxer / boxers]
mrukaji / warukaji	[jumper / jumpers]
mwanariadha / wanariadha	[athlete / athletes]
mwanakandanda / wanakandanda	[soccer player / soccer players]
mlinda lango / walinda lango; golikipa / magolikipa	[goal keeper / goal keepers]

### Zingatia [Note]

chumba cha mazoezi	[gym]
mchezo / michezo	[game/sport]
kufanya mazoezi	[to do a work out]
uwanja wa michezo	[field/sports ground]
yote	[all]
yoyote	[any]

## Question and Sentence Formation

Mifano:

### 1. (Wewe) Unapenda michezo gani?

[Which sports do you like?]

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda hoki na raga.     | [I like hockey and rugby.] |
| b). Ninapenda michezo yote.     | [I like all sports.]       |
| c). Ninapenda mchezo wa vikapu. | [I like basketball.]       |

### 2. (Wewe) Hupendi michezo gani?

[Which sports do you not like?]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a). Sipendi karate, voliboli, na dondi. | [I don't like karate, volleyball, and boxing.] |
| b). Sipendi michezo yoyote.             | [I don't like any sports.]                     |

### 3. Ninaenda chumba cha mazoezi.

[I am going to the gym.]

**4. Ninaenda kufanya mazoezi.**

[I am going to work out.]

**5. Chuo kikuu cha Kansas ni kizuri katika mchezo wa vikapu.**

[The University of Kansas is good in basketball.]

**6. Ninaenda kuona mchezo wa vikapu katika Allen Fieldhouse.**

[I am going to watch basketball at Allen Fieldhouse.]

**7. Leo nitaona mechi / mchezo wa vikapu baina / kati ya chuo kikuu cha Kansas (KU) na chuo kikuu cha Missouri (MU).**

[Today I will watch the basketball game between KU and MU.]

**8. Leo kuna mechi / mchezo wa vikapu baina / kati ya chuo kikuu cha Kansas na Missouri.**

[Today there is a basketball match between KU and MU.]

**9. Jana kulikuwa na mechi / mchezo wa vikapu baina / kati ya chuo kikuu cha Kansas na Missouri.**

[Yesterday there was a basketball game between KU and MU.]

**10. Kesho kutakuwa na mechi / mchezo wa vikapu baina / kati ya chuo kikuu cha Kansas na Missouri.**

[Tomorrow there will be a game between KU and MU.]

**11. Ninatoka kufanya mazoezi.**

[I am coming from doing a workout.]

**12. Ninatoka kufanya mazoezi katika chumba cha mazoezi.**

[I coming from doing a workout in the gym.]

**13. Max ni mchezaji mzuri wa mchezo wa vikapu.**

[Max is a good basketball player.]

**14. Drake anapenda mchezo wa vikapu.**

[Drake likes basketball.]

**15. Brooke hapendi dondi.**

[Brooke does not like boxing.]

**16. Timu ya KU ilishinda mechi / mchezo jana.**

[The KU team won the game yesterday.]

**17. Timu ya KU ni nzuri katika mchezo wa vikapu.**

[The KU team is good at basketball.]

**18. Unapenda wachezaji gani wa timu ya KU?**

[Which player do you like on the KU team?]

# Lesson 48:

## Tenses

### Tenses [nyakati]

There are five major tenses in Swahili:

- Present [wakati uliopo]
- Present Perfect [wakati uliopo hali timilifu]
- Past [wakati uliopita]
- Future [wakati ujao]
- Habitual [wakati wa mazoea]

#### A). Present [wakati uliopo]

The present tense uses **-NA-**

Sentensi:

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi <b>nina</b> soma Kiswahili. | [I am studying/reading Kiswahili.]   |
| 2. Sisi <b>tuna</b> soma Kiswahili. | [We are studying/reading Kiswahili.] |

#### B). Present Perfect [wakati uliopo hali timilifu]

The present perfect tense uses **-ME-**

Sentensi:

- |                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi <b>nime</b> soma Kiswahili. | [I have read/studied Kiswahili.]  |
| 2. Sisi <b>tume</b> soma Kiswahili. | [We have read/studied Kiswahili.] |

#### C). Past [wakati uliopita]

The past tense uses **-LI-**

Sentensi:

- |                                     |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi <b>nil</b> isoma Kiswahili. | [I read/studied Kiswahili.]   |
| 2. Sisi <b>tuli</b> soma Kiswahili. | [We read/ studied Kiswahili.] |

## D). Future [wakati ujao]

The future tense uses **-TA-**

Sentensi:

- |                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mimi nitasoma Kiswahili. | [I will read/study Kiswahili.]  |
| 2. Sisi tutasoma Kiswahili. | [We will read/study Kiswahili.] |

## E). Habitual [wakati wa mazoea]

The habitual tense uses **HU-**

If your intention is to express an idea that happens on a regular basis, use the habitual tense which is represented by the **HU-** prefix on the verb.

Sentensi:

- |   |
|---|
| 1. Mimi <u>huoga</u> kila asubuhi.<br>[I shower every morning.]                   |
| 2. Mimi <u>hupiga</u> mswaki kila asubuhi.<br>[I brush my teeth every morning.]   |
| 3. Mimi <u>hula</u> kiamsha kinywa.<br>[I eat breakfast.]                         |
| 4. Mimi <u>huenda</u> darasani saa tatu asubuhi.<br>[I go to class at 9am.]       |
| 5. Mimi <u>hula</u> chakula cha mchana saa sita mchana.<br>[I eat lunch at noon.] |
| 6. Mimi <u>huenda</u> nyumbani saa kumi jioni.<br>[I go home at 4pm.]             |
| 7. Mimi <u>hucheza</u> jioni.<br>[I play in the evening.]                         |
| 8. Mimi <u>hula</u> chakula cha jioni saa moja usiku.<br>[I eat dinner at 7pm.]   |
| 9. Mimi <u>husoma</u> saa tatu na nusu usiku.<br>[I study at 7:30pm.]             |

10. Mimi **hulala** saa nne usiku.

[I go to sleep at 10pm.]

11. Wanafunzi **husoma** Kiswahili kila siku.

[Students read/study Kiswahili every day.]

12. Yeye **huzungumza** sana.

[He/She talks a lot.]

13. Mwalimu **hufundisha** saa tatu asubuhi.

[The teacher teaches at 9am.]

## F). Conditional [ wakati tegemezi; -NGE- na -NGALI-]

In Kiswahili, conditional tenses are represented by -NGE- and -NGALI-

-NGE- is a prefix that is used in verbs to express a condition that can still be realized.

-NGE- expressions have two parts:

- the condition
- the consequence

Mfano:

- *the condition:* U**nge**-wa-ona, [If you were to see them,]
- *the consequence:* u**nge**-wa-penda. [you would like them.]

Sentensi:

1. Tun**gewakuta** wan**ge**kula maembe.

[If we were to find them, they would eat mangoes.]

2. Nin**ge**kaa Florida nin**ge**kula machungwa.

[If I were to live in Florida, I would eat oranges.]

3. Nin**ge**ishi Chicago nin**ge**ona theluji.

[If I were to live in Chicago, I would see snow.]

4. Nin**gesoma** Kiswahili nin**ge**enda Kenya.

[If I were to study Kiswahili, I would go to Kenya.]

5. Un**ge**ona televisheni un**ge**lala mapema.

[If you were to watch television, you would go to sleep early.]

6. Nin**ge**cheza nin**ge**choka.

[If I were to play, I would be tired.]



## 7. Ningeishi Kentucky ningekula Kentucky Fried Chicken.

[If I were to live in Kentucky, I would eat Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

## The Regret Marker -**NGALI**-

**-NGALI-** is a prefix that is used in verbs to express a condition that can no longer be realized (too late).

**-NGALI-** expressions have two parts:

- the event or act no longer possible
- the result too late to come true

Mfano:

- *event no longer possible:* U-**ngali**-wa-ona [If you had seen them,]
- *result too late to come true:* u-**ngali**-wa-penda. [you would have liked them.]

Sentensi:

### 1. Tungaliwakuta wangalikula maembe.

[If we had found them, they would have eaten mangoes.]

### 2. Ningalikaa Florida ningalikula machungwa.

[If I had lived in Florida, I would have eaten oranges.]

### 3. Ningaliishi Chicago ningaliona theluji.

[If I had lived in Chicago, I would have seen snow.]

### 4. Ningalisoma Kiswahili ningalienda Kenya.

[If I had studied Kiswahili, I would have gone to Kenya.]

### 5. Ungaliona televisheni ungalilala mapema.

[If you had watched television, you would have gone to sleep early.]

### 6. Ningalicheza ningalichoka.

[If I had played/danced, I would have been tired.]

### 7. Ningaliishi Kentucky ningalikula Kentucky Fried Chicken.

[If I had lived in Kentucky, I would have eaten Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

## Zingatia [Note]

Both **-NGE-** and **-NGALI-** forms are used interchangeably for both the events/acts that can still be realized and those that are no longer possible, and although **-NGE-** is 'supposed' to be used in the **present** and **-NGALI-** in the **past**, the line between the two is blurred and both can still be used interchangeably.

# Lesson 49:

## Negation

### Negation [vikanushi]

- A). Negation within Personal Pronouns [vikanushi vya nafsi]
- B). Negation with the Tenses [vikanushi vya nyakati]
- C). Negation within Noun Classes [vikanushi vya ngeli]

### A). Negation within Personal Pronouns

Pronoun	Pronoun Marker	Negation Marker	Example		
			<i>Sentence</i>	<i>Negation</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<b>Mimi</b>	NI	<b>SI-</b>	Ninaimba	<b>Siimbi</b>	I am not singing.
<b>Sisi</b>	TU	<b>HATU-</b>	Tunaimba	<b>Hatuimbi</b>	We are not singing.
<b>Wewe</b>	U	<b>HU-</b>	Unaimba	<b>Huimbi</b>	You are not singing.
<b>Ninyi</b>	M	<b>HAM-</b>	Mnaimba	<b>Hamimbi</b>	You (pl.) are not singing.
<b>Yeye</b>	A	<b>HA-</b>	Anaimba	<b>Haimbi</b>	He/She is not singing.
<b>Wao</b>	WA	<b>HAWA-</b>	Wanaimba	<b>Hawaimbi</b>	They are not singing.

### B). Negation with the Tenses

#### i. Present [wakati uliopo]

- In 1<sup>st</sup> Person singular, **NI-** changes to **SI-**
- For all forms, the tense marker **-NA-** is deleted and the final vowel **-A** changes to **-I**

Sentensi:

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Ninasoma</b> Kiswahili. | [I am studying/reading Kiswahili.]              |
| <b>Sisomi</b> Kiswahili.      | [I am <b>not</b> studying/reading Kiswahili.]   |
| 2. <b>Tunasoma</b> Kiswahili. | [We are studying/reading Kiswahili.]            |
| <b>Hatusomi</b> Kiswahili.    | [We are <b>not</b> studying/reading Kiswahili.] |

## ii. Present Perfect [wakati uliopo hali timilifu]

- In 1<sup>st</sup> Person singular, **NI-** changes to **SI-**
- For all forms, the tense marker **-ME-** changes to **-JA-** and the final vowel does not change

Sentensi:

1. <b>Nimesoma</b> Kiswahili.	[I have read/studied Kiswahili.]
<b>Sijasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[I have <b>not</b> read/studied Kiswahili.]
2. <b>Tumesoma</b> Kiswahili.	[We have read/studied Kiswahili.]
<b>Hatujasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[We have <b>not</b> read/studied Kiswahili.]

## iii. Past [wakati uliopita]

- In 1<sup>st</sup> Person singular, **NI-** changes to **SI-**
- For all forms, the tense marker **-LI-** changes to **-KU-** and the final vowel does not change

Sentensi:

1. <b>Nilisoma</b> Kiswahili.	[I read/studied Kiswahili.]
<b>Sikusoma</b> Kiswahili.	[I did <b>not</b> read/study Kiswahili.]
2. <b>Tulisoma</b> Kiswahili.	[We read/ studied Kiswahili.]
<b>Hatukusoma</b> Kiswahili.	[We did <b>not</b> read/study Kiswahili.]

## iv. Future [wakati ujao]

- In 1<sup>st</sup> Person singular, **NI-** changes to **SI-**
- For all forms, the tense marker does not change

Sentensi:

1. <b>Nitasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[I will read/study Kiswahili.]
<b>Sitasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[I will <b>not</b> ready/study Kiswahili.]
2. <b>Tutasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[We will read/study Kiswahili.]
<b>Hatutasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[We will <b>not</b> read/study Kiswahili.]
3. <b>Atasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[He/She will read/study Kiswahili.]
<b>Hatasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[He/She will <b>not</b> read/study Kiswahili.]
4. <b>Watasoma</b> Kiswahili.	[They will read/study Kiswahili.]
<b>Hawatasoma</b> Kiswahili	[They will <b>not</b> read/study Kiswahili.]

Sentensi zaidi:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. Waliimba nyimbo.                           | [They sang songs.]                                       |
| <b>Hawakuimba</b> nyimbo.                     | [They did <b>not</b> sing songs.]                        |
| 6. Ninaenda Kansas City.                      | [I am going to Kansas City.]                             |
| <b>Siendi</b> Kansas City.                    | [I am <b>not</b> going to Kansas City.]                  |
| 7. Utaenda Missouri kesho.                    | [You will go to Missouri tomorrow.]                      |
| <b>Hutaenda</b> Missouri kesho.               | [You will <b>not</b> go to Missouri tomorrow.]           |
| 8. Tulicheza mchezo wa vikapu jana.           | [We played basketball yesterday.]                        |
| <b>Hatukucheza</b> mchezo wa vikapu jana.     | [We did <b>not</b> play basketball yesterday.]           |
| 9. Amependa pombe sana.                       | [He/She likes alcohol a lot.]                            |
| <b>Hapendi</b> pombe sana.                    | [He/She does <b>not</b> like alcohol a lot.]             |
| 10. Wataona televisheni kabla ya kulala.      | [The will watch television before sleeping.]             |
| <b>Hatawaona</b> televisheni kabla ya kulala. | [They will <b>not</b> watch television before sleeping.] |

## v. Habitual [wakati wa mazoea]

- Negate the verb as if it were in present tense
- Precede the verb with the word **huwa**

Sentensi:

1. Mimi **hu**enda kazini saa mbili asubuhi kila siku.  
[I go to work at 8am every day.]  
Mimi **huwa siendi** kazini saa mbili asubuhi kila siku.  
[I do not usually go to work at 8am every day.]
2. Yeye **hu**endesha gari la baba yake.  
[He/She drives his/her father's car.]  
Yeye **huwa haendeshi** gari la baba yake.  
[He/She does not usually drive his/her father's car.]
3. Watoto **hu**panda basi la shule.  
[The children usually board the school bus.]  
Watoto **huwa hawapandi** basi la shule.  
[The children do not usually board the school bus.]

4. Mimi **hu**osha nguo kila asubuhi.

[I usually wash clothes every morning.]

Mimi **huwa** sioشي nguo kila asubuhi.

[I usually do not wash clothes every morning.]

5. Yeye **hu**kunywa/**hu**nywa kahawa/chai jioni.

[He/She drinks coffee/tea in the evening.]

Yeye **huwa** hanywi kahawa/chai jioni.

[He/She does not usually drink coffee in the evening.]

6. Wanafunzi **hu**soma Kiswahili saa tatu asubuhi.

[The students usually study Kiswahili at nine in the morning.]

Wanafunzi **hu**wa hawasomi Kiswahili saa tatu asubuhi.

[The students do not usually study Kiswahili at nine in the morning.]

## vi. Conditional Markers [hali tegemezi] -NGE- na -NGALI-

➤ The negation of -NGE- and -NGALI- is done by inserting -SI-

Mifano:

1. Tu**nge**wakuta wa**nge**kula maembe.

[If we were to find them, they would eat mangoes.]

Tu**si**gewakuta, wa**si**gekula maembe.

[If we were not to find them, they would not have eaten mangoes.]

2. Ni**nge**kaa Florida ni**nge**kula machungwa.

[If I were to live in Florida, I would eat oranges.]

Ni**si**ngekaa Florida ni**si**gekula machungwa.

[If I were not to live in Florida, I would not eat oranges.]

3. Ni**nge**ishi Kansas ni**nge**ona theluji.

[If I were to live in Kansas, I would see snow.]

Ni**si**ngeishi Kansas ni**si**ngeona theluji.

[If I were not to live in Kansas, I would not see snow.]

4. Ni**nge**soma Kiswahili ni**nge**enda Kenya.

[If I were to study Kiswahili, I would go to Kenya.]

Ni**si**ngesoma Kiswahili ni**si**ngeenda Kenya.

[If I were not to study Kiswahili, I would not go to Kenya.]

**5. Ungeona televisheni ungelala mapema.**

[If you were to watch television, you would go to sleep early.]

Usingeona televisheni usingelala mapema.

[If you were not to watch television, you would not go to sleep early.]

**6. Ningecheza ningechoka.**

[If I were to play, I would be tired.]

Nisingecheza nisingechoka.

[If I were not to play, I would not be tired.]

**7. Ningeishi Kentucky ningekula Kentucky Fried Chicken.**

[If I were to live in Kentucky, I would eat Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

Nisingeishi Kentucky nisingekula Kentucky Fried Chicken.

[If I were not to live in Kentucky, I would not eat Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

**Mifano:**

**1. Tungaliwakuta wangalikula maembe.**

[If we had found them, they would have eaten mangoes.]

Tusingaliwakuta wasingalikula maembe.

[If we had not found them, they would not have eaten mangoes.]

**2. Ningalikaa Florida ningalikula machungwa.**

[If I had lived in Florida, I would have eaten oranges.]

Nisingalika Florida nisingalikula machungwa.

[If I had not lived in Florida, I would not have eaten oranges.]

**3. Ningaliiishi Kansas ningaliona theluji.**

[If I had lived in Kansas, I would have seen snow.]

Nisingaliishi Kansas nisingaliona theluji.

[If I had not lived in Kansas, I would not have seen snow.]

**4. Ningaliisoma Kiswahili ningalienda Kenya.**

[If I had studied Kiswahili, I would have gone to Kenya.]

Nisingalisoma Kiswahili nisingalienda Kenya.

[If I had not studied Kiswahili, I would not have gone to Kenya.]

**5. Ungaliona televisheni ngalilala mapema.**

[If you had watched television, you would have gone to sleep early.]

Usingaliona televisheni usingalilala mapema.

[If you had not watched television, you would not have gone to sleep early.]

**6. Ningalicheza ningalichoka.**

[If I had played/danced, I would have been tired.]

Nisingalicheza nisingalichoka.

[If I had not played/danced, I would not have been tired.]

**7. Ningaliishi Kentucky ningalikula Kentucky Fried Chicken.**

[If I had lived in Kentucky, I would have eaten Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

Nisingaliishi Kentucky nisingalikula Kentucky Fried Chicken.

[If I had not lived in Kentucky, I would not have eaten Kentucky Fried Chicken.]

## C). Negation within Noun Classes

NGELI [noun class]	Verb	Negation	Example	
	Prefix	Marker	Sentence	Negation
<b>M</b>	A	ha-	Mtoto analala.	Mtoto <b>halali</b> .
<b>WA</b>	WA	hawa-	Watoto wanalala.	Watoto <b>hawalali</b> .
<b>KI</b>	KI	haki-	Kiti kilianguka.	Kiti <b>hakikuanguka</b> .
<b>VI</b>	VI	havi-	Viti vilianguka.	Viti <b>havikuanguka</b> .
<b>M</b>	U	hau-	Mguu unauma.	Mguu <b>haumi</b> .
<b>MI</b>	I	hai-	Miguu inauma.	Miguu <b>haiumi</b> .
<b>JI</b>	LI	hali-	Tunda limefika.	Tunda <b>halijafika</b> .
<b>MA</b>	YA	haya-	Matunda yamefika.	Matunda <b>hayajafika</b> .
<b>N</b>	I	hai-	Saa ilifika.	Saa <b>haikufika</b> .
<b>N</b>	ZI	hazi-	Saa zilifika.	Saa <b>hazikufika</b> .
<b>U</b>	U	hau-	Ukuta utavutia.	Ukuta <b>hautavutia</b> .
<b>U</b>	ZI	hazi-	Kuta zitavutia.	Kuta <b>hazitavutia</b> .
<b>U</b>	U	hau-	Ugali umeanguka.	Ugali <b>haujaanguka</b> .
<b>U</b>	U	hau-	Ugali umeanguka.	Ugali <b>haujaanguka</b> .
<b>KU</b>	KO	haku-	Kula kunatisha.	Kula <b>hakutishi</b> .
<b>KU</b>	KO	haku-	Kula kunatisha.	Kula <b>hakutishi</b> .
<b>PA</b>	PO	hapa-	Pahali panafaa.	Pahali <b>hapafai</b> .
<b>PA</b>	PO	hapa-	Pahali panafaa.	Pahali <b>hapafai</b> .
<b>MU</b>	MO	ham-	Darasani mnatisha.	Darasani <b>hamtishi</b> .
<b>MU</b>	MO	ham-	Darasani mnatisha.	Darasani <b>hamtishi</b> .

### Muhtasari [Summary]

	kiwakilishi wakati [tense marker]	kikanushi [negation]
Present:	<b>-NA-</b>	<b>-</b>
Present Perfect:	<b>-ME-</b>	<b>-JA-</b>
Past:	<b>-LI-</b>	<b>-KU-</b>
Future:	<b>-TA-</b>	<b>-TA-</b>
Habitual:	<b>HU-</b>	<b>HUWA</b>



## Sentensi zaidi:

1. Chuo kimefungwa.	[The college is closed.]
Chuo hakijafungwa.	[The college is not closed.]
Vyuo vimefungwa.	[The colleges are closed.]
Vyuo havijafungwa	[The colleges are not closed.]
2. Gari liliondoka jana.	[The car left yesterday.]
Gari halikuondoka jana.	[The car did not leave yesterday.]
Magari yaliondoka jana.	[The cars left yesterday]
Magari hayakuondoka jana.	[The cars did not leave yesterday]
3. Nyumba inasafishwa na mama.	[The house is being cleaned by mother.]
Nyumba haisafishwi na mama.	[The house is not being cleaned by mother]
Nyumba zinasafishwa na mama.	[The houses are being cleaned by mother]
Nyumba hazisafishwi na mama.	[The houses are not being cleaned by mother]
4. Kunywa pombe nyingi kunatisha.	[Drinking too much alcohol is scary.]
Kunywa pombe nyingi hakutishi.	[Drinking too much alcohol is not scary.]
5. Tutaona mchezo wa vikapu Jumamosi.	[We will see the basketball game on Saturday.]
Hatutaona mchezo wa vikapu Jumamosi.	[We will not see the basketball game on Saturday.]
6. Alisafiri hadi Kanada jana.	[He travelled to Canada yesterday.]
Hakusafiri hadi Kanada jana.	[He did not travel to Canada yesterday.]
7. Wanaomba kanisani sasa.	[They are praying in the church now.]
Hawaombi kanisani sasa.	[They are not praying in the church now.]
8. Ningalienda Kansas City, ningalicheza sana.	[If I had gone to Kansas City, I would have played a lot.]
Nisingalienda Kansas City, nisingalicheza sana.	[If I had not gone to Kansas City, I would not have played a lot.]
9. Ningalikula chakula, ningalifurahi.	[If I would have eaten, I would have been happy.]
Nisingalikula chakula, nisingalifurahi.	[If I had not eaten, I would not have been happy.]

10. Tunesoma sana, tungepita  
mtihani.

Tusingesoma sana tusingepita  
mtihani.

11. Tungalilala kidogo,  
tungalipumzika.

Tusingalilala kidogo,  
tusingalipumzika.

[If we had studied a lot, we would have  
passed the exam.]

[If we had not studied a lot, we would  
not have passed the exam.]

[If we had slept a little, we would have  
rested.]

[If we had not slept a little, we would  
not have rested.]

# Lesson 50a:

## Domestic Animals

Domestic Animals [wanyama wa nyumbani]	
bata	[duck]
bata mzinga	[turkey]
farasi	[horse]
jogoo	[rooster]
kondoo	[sheep]
mwanakondoo	[lamb]
kuku	[chicken]
mbuzi	[goat]
mwanambuzi	[kid]
mbwa	[dog]
ng'ombe	[cattle/cow]
ndama	[calf]
ngamia	[camel]
nguruwe	[pig]
paka	[cat]
punda	[donkey]
kasuku	[parrot]
njiwa	[pigeon]
nyumbu/baghala	[mule]
ndege	[bird]
kanga	[guinea fowl]

Zingatia [Note]	
fuga	[keep, rear, raise]
wanyama wa nyumbani	[domestic animals]
mnyama pendwa	[favorite animal]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### **1. Unapenda wanyama gani wa nyumbani?**

[Which domestic animals do you like?]

Ninapenda ngamia, paka, na farasi. [I like camels, cats, and horses.]

### **2. Wewe hupendi wanyama gani?**

[Which animals do you dislike?]

Sipendi nguruwe na kasuku. [I do not like pigs and parrots.]

### **3. Je, (wewe) unafuga wanyama gani wa nyumbani?**

[What domestic animals do you raise at home?]

Ninafuga mbwa na paka. [I am raising dogs and cats.]

### **4. Mnyama pendwa wako wa nyumbani ni gani?**

[What is your favorite domestic animal?]

Mnyama pendwa wangu wa nyumbani ni paka au mbwa. [My favorite domestic animal is a cat or a dog.]

# Lesson 50b:

## Wild Animals and Tourist Attractions

Wild Animals and Tourist Attractions		[wanyama wa porini na vivutio vya watalii]
chui	[leopard]	
chura	[frog]	
duma	[cheetah]	
fisi	[hyena]	
gwagu	[wild cat]	
kasuku	[parrot]	
kiboko	[hippo]	
kima; tumbili	[monkey]	
kinyonga; lumbwi	[chameleon]	
kobe	[tortoise]	
kongoni	[hartebeest]	
korongo	[flamingo]	
kichakuro	[squirrel]	
mbwa chotara	[mongrel]	
mjusi	[lizard]	
mwewe	[kite]	
ndovu; tembo	[elephant]	
ngiri	[wild boar]	
nguchiro	[mongoose]	
nguruwe mwitu	[wild pig]	
nyani	[baboon]	
nyati; mbogo	[buffalo]	
nyoka	[snake]	
paa	[deer]	
punda milia	[zebra]	
simba	[lion]	
simbamarara	[lioness]	
sokwe	[gorilla]	
sokwe mtu; chipanzi	[chimpanzee]	
sungura	[hare; rabbit]	
swala	[gazelle]	

<b>tai</b>	<b>[eagle]</b>
<b>twiga</b>	<b>[giraffe]</b>
<b>mbweha</b>	<b>[fox; jackal]</b>
<b>nungunungu</b>	<b>[porcupine]</b>
<b>mamba; ngwena</b>	<b>[crocodile]</b>
<b>mbuni</b>	<b>[ostrich]</b>
<b>tandala</b>	<b>[greater kudu]</b>
<b>pimbi</b>	<b>[hyrax]</b>
<b>fuko</b>	<b>[mole]</b>
<b>kifaru; pea</b>	<b>[rhinoceros]</b>
<b>kulungu</b>	<b>[antelope]</b>
<b>komba</b>	<b>[bush baby]</b>
<b>buku</b>	<b>[giant rat]</b>
<b>mhanga</b>	<b>[ant bear]</b>
<b>pofu</b>	<b>[eland (largest of the antelopes)]</b>
<b>ngawa</b>	<b>[(African) civet cat]</b>
<b>dubu</b>	<b>[bear]</b>
<b>tohe</b>	<b>[wild goat]</b>
<b>kenge</b>	<b>[lizard (monitor)]</b>
<b>pongo</b>	<b>[bushbuck]</b>
<b>mbwa mwitu</b>	<b>[wild dog]</b>
<b>chui mwenye milia</b>	<b>[tiger]</b>
<b>panya</b>	<b>[rat]</b>
<b>popo</b>	<b>[bat]</b>
<b>pomboo</b>	<b>[dolphin]</b>
<b>sili</b>	<b>[guinea pig]</b>
<b>swala pala</b>	<b>[impala]</b>
<b>choroa</b>	<b>[orynx]</b>
<b>bundi</b>	<b>[owl]</b>
<b>ndege</b>	<b>[bird]</b>
<b>mbango</b>	<b>[warthog]</b>
<b>guruguru</b>	<b>[large burrowing lizard]</b>
<b>wibari</b>	<b>[hyrax; rock rabbit]</b>
<b>mbega</b>	<b>[colobus monkey]</b>
<b>kuro</b>	<b>[waterbuck; caribou]</b>
<b>ngedere</b>	<b>[small black monkey]</b>
<b>kakakuona</b>	<b>[pangolin]</b>

## B). Tourist Attractions [vivutio vya watalii]

maporomoko	[waterfalls]
daraja / madaraja	[bridge / bridges]
mbuga za wanyama	[game reserves; game parks]
hoteli	[hotels]
milima	[mountains]
mito	[rivers]
watu na utamaduni	[people and cultures]
misitu	[forests]
ndege	[birds]
maziwa	[lakes]
bahari	[oceans]
mazingira	[environment]
visiwa	[islands]
miji ya pwani	[coastal cities]
wanywama wa kuvutia	[attractive animals]
fukwe	[beaches]
fuo	[shores]
maua	[flowers]
mchanga	[sand]
majangwa	[deserts]
mabonde	[valleys]
hifadhi	[conservations]
mirima	[coastlands]
miambao ya pwani	[coastlines]
mimea	[plants]
majumba/majengo ya zamani ya kihistoria	[old historical buildings]
chemchemi	[fountains]
ardhi/udongo	[soil]
madini	[minerals]
wanyama wa majini	[sea animals]

## C). Sea Animals [wanyama wa majini]

mamba / ngwena	[crocodile]
konokono	[snail]
samaki	[fish]
chura	[frog]
kiboko	[hippopotamus]
taa	[large flat fish]
kaa	[crab]

sangara	[Nile perch]
papa	[shark]
pomboo	[dolphins]
kasa	[sea-turtle]
pweza	[octopus]
mkunga	[eel]
kamba	[shrimp / prawn / crayfish]
chuchunge	[sword fish]
ningu	[spiked freshwater fish]
nyangumi	[whale]
nguva	[mermaid]
dagaa	[sardine]

Zingatia [Note]	
Hutembelea	[They always visit]
pesa za kigeni	[foreign currency]
biashara	[business]
mnyama pendwa	[favorite pet]
kivutio / vivutio	[attraction / attractions]
mtalii / watalii	[tourist / tourists]
pori	[wild]
porini	[wilderness]

Question Formation	
Mifano:	
<b>1. Unapenda wanyama gani wa porini?</b>	
[Which wild animals do you like?]	
Ninapenda kima, bundi, simba, na mjusi.	
[I like monkeys, owls, lions, and lizards.]	
<b>2. Hupendi wanyama gani wa porini?</b>	
[Which wild animals do you dislike?]	
Sipendi vifaru, buku, nyati, na punda milia.	
[I dislike rhinoceroses, giant rats, buffalo, and zebras.]	



**3. Kuna vivutio gani vya watalii nchini Marekani?**

[What attractions are there in America?]

Kuna \_\_\_\_\_.

[There are \_\_\_\_\_.]

**4. Afrika ya Mashariki ina vivutio gani vya watalii?**

[What tourist attractions does East Africa have?]

Afrika ya Mashariki ina \_\_\_\_\_.

[East Africa has \_\_\_\_\_.]

# Lesson 51:

## The Connective -A of Association

### Connective -A [kivumishi -A unganifu]

The English possessive case "'s", which is often equivalent to "of" when it marks possession, is translated into Kiswahili by a particle whose root is **-A**. The connective particle **-A** agrees in class with the noun of the thing (or person) possessed.

- A). Connective -A
- B). Connective -A and Noun Classes
- C). Word Order
- D). Possessive Pronouns

### A). Connective -A

One way of expressing a relationship between two things is using the **-A** of association. In the greeting *habari za leo* the associative *za* "of" is used.

- *Habari **za** leo?* [How is today's news?/How is today?]

The noun "*habari*" can be associated with all kinds of nouns, and so the *habari* greeting is used to inquire about anything:

- *Habari **za** jana?* [How was yesterday's news?/How was yesterday?]
- *Habari **za** asubuhi?* [How is the morning news?/How is your morning?]
- *Habari **za** kazi?* [How is work's news?/How is work?]

One associative:

Habari za masomo?	[How are your studies?]
Habari za baba?	[How is your father?]
Habari za Tanzania?	[How is Tanzania?]
Habari za Kiswahili?	[How is Kiswahili?]
Habari za California?	[How is California?]
jimbo la Kansas	[the state of Kansas]
mji wa Lawrence	[the city of Lawrence]

chuo kikuu cha Kansas nchi ya Amerika	[The University of Kansas] [the country of America]
--	--

Two associatives:	
Habari za masomo ya historia?	[How are your history studies?]
Habari za mwanafunzi wa Kiswahili?	[How is the Kiswahili student?]
Habari za mwalimu wa Kiswahili?	[How is the Kiswahili teacher?]

B). Connective -A and Noun Classes			
NGELI	CONNECTIVE -A	SENTENCE	TRANSLATION
M	<b>wa</b>	mwana <b>wa</b> baba	Father's child
WA	<b>wa</b>	wana <b>wa</b> baba	Father's children
KI	<b>cha</b>	kiti <b>cha</b> baba	Father's chair
VI	<b>vya</b>	viti <b>vya</b> baba	Father's chairs
M	<b>wa</b>	mti <b>wa</b> baba	Father's tree
MI	<b>ya</b>	miti <b>ya</b> baba	Father's trees
JI	<b>la</b>	gari <b>la</b> baba	Father's car
MA	<b>ya</b>	magari <b>ya</b> baba	Father's cars
N	<b>ya</b>	nyumba <b>ya</b> baba	Father's house
N	<b>za</b>	nyumba <b>za</b> baba	Father's houses
U	<b>wa</b>	ubao <b>wa</b> baba	Father's board
ZI	<b>za</b>	mbao <b>za</b> baba	Father's boards
U	<b>wa</b>	ugali <b>wa</b> baba	Father's cornmeal
U	<b>wa</b>	ugali <b>wa</b> baba	Father's cornmeal
KU	<b>kwa</b>	kulala <b>kwa</b> baba	Father's sleep
KU	<b>kwa</b>	kulala <b>kwa</b> baba	Father's sleep
PA	<b>pa</b>	pahali/mahali <b>pa</b> baba	Father's place
PA	<b>pa</b>	pahali/mahali <b>pa</b> baba	Father's place
MU	<b>mwa</b>	nyumbani <b>mwa</b> baba	Father's house
MU	<b>mwa</b>	nyumbani <b>mwa</b> baba	Father's house

## C). Word Order

When ownership or possession is conveyed by the word "of" in an English sentence, the word order is exactly the same in Kiswahili. The only difference is that an adjective must follow the noun it qualifies.

Mifano:

a). mtoto mdogo wa mama	[small child of the mother / <i>mother's small child</i> ]
b). mikono mikubwa ya mtoto mdogo	[large hands of the small child / <i>small child's large hands</i> ]
c). viatu vichafu vya watoto	[dirty shoes of the children / <i>children's dirty shoes</i> ]
d). gari jipya la baba	[new car of the father / <i>father's new car</i> ]

## D). Possessive Pronouns

Remember also that the same prefix is used for all possessive pronouns:

	<b>Umoja</b> (singular)	<b>Wingi</b> (plural)
<b>1<sup>st</sup> Person</b>	darasa <b>langu</b> [my class]	darasa <b>letu</b> [our class]
<b>2<sup>nd</sup> Person</b>	darasa <b>lako</b> [your class]	darasa <b>lenu</b> [your (pl.) class]
<b>3<sup>rd</sup> Person</b>	darasa <b>lake</b> [his/her class]	darasa <b>lao</b> [their class]

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

<b>1.</b> Mbwa <b>wa</b> mjomba ni huyu.	[Uncle's dog is this one.]
Mbwa <b>wa</b> wajomba ni hawa.	[Uncle's dogs are these ones.]
<b>2.</b> Kiko <b>cha</b> babu kimeanguka.	[Grandfather's pipe has fallen.]
Viko <b>vya</b> babu vimeanguka.	[Grandfather's pipes have fallen.]
<b>3.</b> Maji <b>ya</b> mto ni machafu.	[The river's water is dirty.]
Maji <b>ya</b> mito ni machafu.	[The rivers' water is dirty.]
<b>4.</b> Shambani <b>mwa</b> mzee ni mzuri.	[The elder's land is good.]
Shambani <b>mwa</b> wazee ni mzuri.	[The elders' land is good.]

**MIFANO ZAIDI:**

<b>5.</b> mtoto <b>wa</b> mwalimu	[teacher's child]
watoto <b>wa</b> walimu	[teachers' children]
<b>6.</b> mkono <b>wa</b> kaka	[brother's arm]
mikono <b>ya</b> kaka	[brother's arms]
<b>7.</b> jina <b>la</b> mgeni	[guest's name]
majina <b>ya</b> wageni	[guest's names]
<b>8.</b> kitabu <b>cha</b> Kiswahili	[Kiswahili book]
vitabu <b>vya</b> Kiswahili	[Kiswahili books]
<b>9.</b> kalamu <b>ya</b> John	[John's pen]
kalamu <b>za</b> John	[John's pens]
<b>10.</b> ufunguo <b>wa</b> gari	[car key]
funguo <b>za</b> gari	[car keys]
<b>11.</b> mfuko <b>wa</b> mwalimu	[teacher's bookbag]
mifuko <b>ya</b> mwalimu	[teacher's bookbags]
<b>12.</b> nyumba <b>ya</b> mwalimu	[teacher's house]
nyumba <b>za</b> mwalimu	[teacher's houses]
<b>13.</b> televisheni <b>ya</b> kaka	[brother's television]
televisheni <b>za</b> kaka	[brother's televisions]
<b>14.</b> gari <b>la</b> Mike	[Mike's car]
magari <b>ya</b> Mike	[Mike's cars]
<b>15.</b> darasa <b>la</b> Kiswahili	[Kiswahili class]
madarasa <b>ya</b> Kiswahili	[Kiswahili classes]

# Lesson 52:

## States of Being

### States of Being [hali]

#### A). States of Being

<b>aibu</b>	[shame; shyness]	<b>wasiwasi</b>	[nervousness; restlessness]
<b>bumbuazi</b>	[stupefaction]	<b>zubaa</b>	[state of stupor]
<b>duwaa</b>	[state of stupor]	<b>ucheshi</b>	[entertainment]
<b>bung'aa</b>	[state of bewilderment]	<b>mizaha</b>	[comedy; jokes]
<b>furaha/raha</b>	[happiness]	<b>hoihoi</b>	[jubilation]
<b>huzuni</b>	[sadness]	<b>shangwe na nderemo</b>	[jubilation]
<b>kiherehere</b>	[naughty]	<b>shangwe na vigelegele</b>	[jubilation]
<b>kimya</b>	[quiet]	<b>vifijo na nderemo</b>	[jubilation]
<b>mageuzi</b>	[upheaval]	<b>shangwe na hoihoi</b>	[jubilation]
<b>mahangaiko</b>	[restlessness]	<b>kelele</b>	[noise]
<b>majonzi</b>	[mourning]	<b>mizaha</b>	[comedy; jokes]
<b>mapinduzi</b>	[overthrow; coup]	<b>hoihoi</b>	[jubilation]
<b>mshangao</b>	[startlement]	<b>shangwe na nderemo</b>	[jubilation]
<b>mshtuko</b>	[astonishment]	<b>shangwe na vigelegele</b>	[jubilation]
<b>msisimko</b>	[excitement]	<b>vifijo na nderemo</b>	[jubilation]
<b>nyamavu</b>	[quiet]	<b>shangwe na hoihoi</b>	[jubilation]
<b>shaka</b>	[doubt]	<b>kelele</b>	[noise]
<b>shangaa</b>	[(be) astonished]	<b>hoi / choka</b>	[exhausted]
<b>shangwe</b>	[be startled]	<b>kuwa mjamzito</b>	[be expectant]
<b>shtuka</b>	[jubilation]	<b>pumzika</b>	[rest]
<b>shwari</b>	[calm]	<b>kizunguzungu</b>	[dizziness]
<b>sikitiko</b>	[regret]	<b>kuwa mjamzito</b>	[be expectant]
<b>taharuki</b>	[excitement]	<b>fitini</b>	[cause discord, make mischief]
<b>takatifu</b>	[holy]	<b>adabu</b>	[good manners, behavior]
<b>tulivu</b>	[calm]	<b>fidhuli</b>	[audacious, rude, arrogant, insulting]
<b>uchungu</b>	[pain]	<b>makini</b>	[keenness, attentiveness, calm]
<b>usununu</b>	[moodiness]		
<b>wahaka</b>	[restlessness]		
<b>jeuri / tundu /</b>	[mischievous,		
<b>tukutu</b>	stubborn, rude]		
<b>shauri</b>	[advice]		
<b>bidii</b>	[determination]		

<b>dhihaka</b>	[mockery, ridicule, joke, teasing]	<b>imara</b>	[firm, solid, robust, stable, strong, unshakable, rigid]
<b>shughuli</b>	[activities]		
<b>hekima</b>	[wisdom]		
<b>wazimu / kichaa</b>	[madness]	<b>msamaha samehe</b>	[forgive, pardon] [to forgive, to pardon]
<b>upumbavu / ujinga</b>	[stupidity]	<b>ruhusa amri</b>	[permission] [order, command, directive]
<b>usingizi choyo</b>	[sleep] [mean, tight-fisted, selfish, egoistic]	<b>ahadi</b>	[promise, pledge, commitment]
<b>huruma</b>	[considerate, merciful, compassionate, kindness]	<b>sahaulifu</b>	[forgetful, inattentive, absent-minded]
<b>kero / kera fedheha</b>	[annoyance, to annoy] [disgrace, shame, scandal]	<b>salamu</b>	[greetings, salutations, pass]
<b>haya</b>	[shame, modesty, disgrace, humility]	<b>hukumu</b>	[pass sentence, judge, decide, adjudicate]
<b>baridi</b>	[cold]	<b>idhini</b>	[permit, give consent, assent]
<b>joto</b>	[warm, hot]		
<b>wivu</b>	[jealousy, envy]	<b>ghadhabu</b>	[rage, fume, wrath, fury, anger]
<b>taabu / shida</b>	[trouble, difficulties]	<b>inda</b>	[meanness]
<b>kisunzi</b>	[nose bleed]		
<b>kuumika</b>	[bloodletting, clupping]		
<b>fitina</b>	[mischief, intrigue, enmity]		

### MIFANO ZAIDI:

kuchafuka	[to get dirty]
kuchoka	[to get tired]
kuwa na huzuni/nina huzuni	[to be sad/I am sad]
kuwa na furaha; kufurahi;	[to be happy]
nina furaha	[I am happy]
kuwa na mizaha/ucheshi	[to be jolly/funny]
ana mizaha	[he/she is funny]
kukasirika	[to be angry]
kunenepa	[to be fat/plump]
kukonda	[to be slim/thin]
kuoa	[to marry (man)]
kuolewa	[to be married]
kuoza	[to be rotten]
kushangaa	[to be surprised]
kuwa mgonjwa/ kuugua/ nina ugonjwa	[to fall sick; to be sick; I am sick]

kuumwa	[to be sick]
kuzeeka	[to get old]
kulia	[to cry]
kuwa na kiu/ nina kiu	[to be thirsty; I am thirsty]
kuwa na njaa/ nina njaa	[to be hungry; I am hungry]
kucheka	[to smile; to laugh]
kusikitika	[to regret]
kuharakisha	[to speed up]
kuchelewa	[to be late]
kulala	[to sleep]
kushiba	[to be satisfied]
kujaa	[to be full (of something)]
kuvaa	[to put on]
kuogopa	[to fear]
kupiga kofi	[to slap]
kupiga makofi	[to clap]
kupiga domo	[to chat]
kupiga miayo	[to yawn]
kupiga kelele	[to make noise]
kuvuta pumzi	[take a breath]
kuvunjika mguu / mkono	[to break a leg / hand]
kusikia maumivu	[forgive, pardon]
kufa / kufariki	[to die]
kuishi	[to live]
kupona	[to get well]
kupata nafuu	[to recover, to get better, to improve]
kuzirai	[to faint]
kuhema / kutweta	[to pant]
kupumua	[to breathe]
kukohoa	[to cough]
kupiga chafya	[to sneeze]
kucheua	[to belch]
kutapika	[to vomit]
kuendesha / kuhara	[to have diarrhea / loose stool]
kuganda	[to freeze]
kuterezeka	[to sprain]
kuanguka	[to fall]
kusimama	[to stand]
kujigonga / kujigota	[to hurt, knock oneself]
kujiangusha	[to knock oneself down, fall]
kubiringika	[to roll]
kujiviringisha	[to swing oneself]
kujikokota	[to walk/move slowly]
kujinyanua	[to lift oneself up after a fall]
kugongwa	[to be knocked]



kuwasha	[itch]
kujeruhiwa	[to be injured]
kuugua	[to burn]
kunywa / kumeza	[to take medicine]
tembe /dawa	
kupewa/ kupata dawa	[to get medicine]
kupata chanjo	[to get vaccinated]
kupima	[to examine]
kupata kitanda	[to be admitted]
kutibiwa	[to be treated]
kutibu	[to treat]
kukinga	[to prevent]
kwenda choo kidogo / mkojo	[to urinate]
/kuchepuka	
kwenda choo kikubwa	[to defecate]
kwenda hospitali	[to go to the hospital]
kwenda kwa daktari	[to go to the hospital]
kuumwa na tumbo / kichwa/ mguu	[to have a stomach ache, headache, leg pains]

Question Formation	
Mifano:	
<b>1. Kwa nini una huzuni?</b> [Why are you sad?]	
a). Kwa sababu mimi ni mgonjwa.	[Because I am sick.]
b). Mimi ni mgonjwa.	[I am sick.]
<b>2. Kwa nini una furaha?</b> [Why are you happy?]	
a). Kwa sababu nimenunua gari jipya.	[Because I have bought a new car.]
b). Nimenunua gari jipya.	[I have bought a new car.]
c). Kwa sababu nina dola nyingi.	[Because I have lots of dollars.]
<b>3. Kwa nini una majonzi leo?</b> [Why are you miserable / sad / mourning today?]	
a). Kwa sababu nimeanguka mtihani/mjarabu wangu.	[Because I have failed my exam/test.]
b). Nimeanguka mtihani/mjarabu wangu.	[I have failed my test.]

#### 4. Kwa nini darasa ni kimya leo?

[Why is the class quiet today?]

a). Kwa sababu mwalimu anafundisha.

[Because the teacher is teaching.]

b). Mwalimu anafundisha.

[The teacher is teaching.]

#### 5. Kwa nini una wasiwasi?

[Why are you nervous?]

a). Kwa sababu sioni funguo za gari langu.

[Because I do not see my car keys.]

b). Sioni funguo za gari langu.

[I do not see my car keys.]

#### 6. Kwa nini darasa lina kelele leo?

[Why is the class noisy today?]

Kwa sababu mwalimu hajafika.

[Because the teacher has not arrived.]

#### 7. Kwa nini umechoka leo?

[Why are you tired today?]

Kwa sababu nimefanya kazi nyingi ya nyumbani.

[Because I have done a lot of homework.]

#### 8. Kwa nini unapumzika?

[Why are you resting?]

Kwa sababu sina kazi nyingi.

[Because I do not have a lot of work.]

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

1. Nina **furaha** leo.  
[I am happy today.]
2. Anna alikuwa na **wasiwasi** darasani / Anna ana **wasiwasi** darasani.  
[Anna was nervous in class/ Anna is nervous in class.]
3. Wanafunzi walikaa darasani **kimya**.  
[The students sat quietly in the classroom.]
4. **Ninaogopa** kuanguka mtihani. / **Ninaogopa** baba na mama yangu.  
[I fear failing the test. / I am afraid of my mother and father.]
5. Nina **majonzi** leo, kwa sababu rafiki yangu ni mgonjwa.  
[I am sad / miserable today because my friend is sick.]
6. Nimesh**angaa** kumwona mama yangu darasani leo.  
[I am astonished / surprised to see my mother in class today.]
7. Darasa /somo la Kiswahili ni **shwari** sana.  
[The Kiswahili lesson is good/cool.]
8. Jessica ni **mcheshi** sana.  
[Jessica is very entertaining / jolly.]

# Lesson 53:

## Terms of Endearment

### Terms of Endearment [msamiati wa mapenzi]

#### A). Terms of Endearment

bembeleza	[cajole; persuade]
busu	[kiss]
dawa ya mapenzi	[love potion]
heba	[glamour]
hidaya	[love token]
kasuku mdogo	[lovebird]
kidege	[little bird]
kipenzi	[dear one]
kupenda	[to love; to like]
kujipenda	[to love yourself]
mahabubu	[beloved]
malaika	[angel]
mapenzi	[love; loving; well wishes]
mhibu	[dear one]
mndani	[sweetheart]
mpendwa	[beloved]
mpenzi	[love; lover; boyfriend/girlfriend]
msiri	[intimate friend]
rafiki	[friend]
mshikaji	[lover]
kipusa; mrembo; mtoto	[beautiful]
mtanashati; mlibwende	[handsome]
ua la waridi	[girlfriend; rose (flower)]
kujipenda	[to like/love oneself]
kujipamba/kujirembesha/ kujishaua	[to make oneself look good / decorate oneself]
kujipodaa	[to beautify oneself (esp. women)]
mchumba	[fiancée]
kuchumbiana	[courting]
arusi	[wedding]

kuheshimu	[to respect]
kuenzi	[to admire / respect / honor]
kuiga	[to copy / emulate]

## B). Extra Vocabulary

mwanaharamu	[lovechild; bastard; illegitimate child]
pendeka	[loveable]
pendo	[love; affection]
tongoza	[seduce]
mahaba / mapenzi	[love affair]
rehema	[loving kindness]
simanzi	[lovesick; lovelorn]
ubembe	[glamour]
ugonjwa wa mahaba	[love sickness]
uhusiano wa kimapenzi	[love affair]
ushawishi	[seduction]
uzinzi / uasherati	[prostitution/ fornication/ adultery]
macho ya nje	[adulterous]
kiruka njia/kahaba / malaya/mzinzi/ nduma kuwili	[prostitute]
kimada	[concubine]
nyumba ndogo / nyumba ya kando / mpango wa kando	[mistress / partner]
hanithi / msenge/ shoga/ mbasha	[gay person]
mhisani	[benefactor]

### Zingatia [note]

kupenda	[to like; to love]
---------	--------------------

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

- 1. Ninakupenda.**  
[I like/love you.]
- 2. Ninakupenda sana.**  
[I like/love you very much.]
- 3. Huyu ni mpenzi (kidege/malaika/msiri/kipenzi/mndani) wangu.**  
[This is my girlfriend/boyfriend.]
- 4. Lisa ni mrembo sana.**  
[Lisa is very beautiful.]
- 5. Wewe ni mrembo sana.**  
[You are very beautiful.]
- 6. Brian ni mtanashati.**  
[Brian is handsome.]
- 7. Michael anatongoza msichana.**  
[Michael is seducing a girl.]
- 8. Melissa ni mpenzi wa Brian.**  
[Melissa is Brian's girlfriend.]
- 9. Leo na Maria wana uhusiano wa kimapenzi.**  
[Leo and Maria have a love affair.]
- 10. Ninakupenda malaika wangu.**  
[I love you, my angel.]
- 11. Nitakubusu jioni.**  
[I will kiss you in the evening.]
- 12. Royel anambusu Joan.**  
[Royel is kissing Joan.]
- 13. Ninampenda mpenzi wangu.**  
[I love my lover.]
- 14. Huyu ni rafiki yangu.**  
[This is my friend.]

# Lesson 54:

## Reduplication

### Reduplication of Verbs [kurudiarudia vitenzi]

When the verb stem is repeated consecutively, the process is called **reduplication**.

The purpose of reduplication in Kiswahili is to emphasize the given information, idea, or act. When information, an idea, or act is emphasized in Kiswahili, it denotes that the act is being done:

- repeatedly
- in small ways/proportions
- slowly
- in a fast way

### Zingatia [Note]

The meaning of the act **depends on the context and the manner in which the act is being done**.

### A). Reduplicated Verbs

soma	[read]	somasoma	[read a little, repeatedly]
piga	[hit]	pigapiga	[hit repeatedly, slowly]
kula	[eat]	kulakula	[eat halfheartedly, slowly, repeatedly]
tupa	[throw]	tupatupa	[throw repeatedly, slowly]
sema	[speak]	semasema	[speak repeatedly, slowly, a little]
zungumza	[speak]	zungumzazungumza	[speak repeatedly, slowly, a little]
ongea	[speak]	ongeaongea	[speak repeatedly, slowly, a little]
anguka	[fall]	angukaanguka	[fall repeatedly, slowly]
haraka	[fast]	harakaharaka	[walk fast, speak fast, eat fast]
pole	[slow]	polepole	[walk slowly, speak slowly, talk slowly]
cheza	[play]	chezacheza	[play repeatedly, slowly]
ruka	[jump]	rukaruka	[jump repeatedly, slowly]
ona	[see, watch]	onaona	[watch repeatedly, slowly]
fanya	[do]	fanyafanya	[do repeatedly, slowly]
tembea	[walk]	tembeatembea	[walk slowly, roam]

<b>lia</b>	[cry]	<b>lialia</b>	[cry repeatedly, slowly, complain]
<b>andika</b>	[write]	<b>andikaandika</b>	[write repeatedly, slowly]
<b>busu</b>	[kiss]	<b>busubusu</b>	[kiss repeatedly, slowly]
<b>gonga</b>	[hit]	<b>gongagonga</b>	[hit repeatedly, slowly]
<b>shika</b>	[hold]	<b>shikashika</b>	[hold repeatedly, slowly]
<b>kata</b>	[cut]	<b>katakata</b>	[cut repeatedly, cut slowly]
<b>omba</b>	[pray]	<b>ombaomba</b>	[pray repeatedly, slowly]
<b>imba</b>	[sing]	<b>imbaimba</b>	[sing repeatedly, slowly]
<b>lala</b>	[sleep]	<b>lalalala</b>	[sleep little, repeatedly]
<b>cheka</b>	[laugh]	<b>chekacheka</b>	[laugh repeatedly, slowly]
<b>pika</b>	[cook]	<b>pikapika</b>	[cook repeatedly, slowly]
<b>penda</b>	[like]	<b>pendapenda</b>	[like repeatedly]
<b>funza</b>	[teach]	<b>funzafunza</b>	[teach repeatedly, slowly]
<b>fundisha</b>	[teach]	<b>fundishafundisha</b>	[teach repeatedly, slowly]
<b>maliza</b>	[end]	<b>malizamaliza</b>	[end repeatedly, slowly]
<b>safisha</b>	[clean]	<b>safishasafisha</b>	[clean repeatedly, slowly]
<b>osha</b>	[clean]	<b>oshaosha</b>	[clean repeatedly, slowly]
<b>jaribu</b>	[try]	<b>jaribujaribu</b>	[try repeatedly, slowly]
<b>kimbia</b>	[run]	<b>kimbiakimbia</b>	[run a little, repeatedly]
<b>angalia</b>	[look, watch]	<b>angaliaangalia</b>	[watch repeatedly, slowly]
<b>anza</b>	[start]	<b>anzaanza</b>	[start repeatedly, slowly]
<b>sahau</b>	[forget]	<b>sahausahau</b>	[forget a little, repeatedly]
<b>chukua</b>	[take]	<b>chukuachukua</b>	[take a little, repeatedly]
<b>omba</b>	[beg/pray]	<b>ombaomba</b>	[beg/pray repeatedly]
<b>enda</b>	[go]	<b>endaenda</b>	[go repeatedly, slowly]
<b>keti</b>	[sit]	<b>ketiketi</b>	[sit repeatedly, slowly]
<b>kaa</b>	[stay]	<b>kaakaa</b>	[stay repeatedly, slowly]
<b>toka</b>	[come from/get out]	<b>tokatoka</b>	[come from/get out repeatedly, slowly]
<b>ondoka</b>	[leave]	<b>ondokaondoka</b>	[leave repeatedly, slowly]
<b>fika</b>	[arrive]	<b>fikafika</b>	[arrive repeatedly, slowly]
<b>ingia</b>	[enter]	<b>ingiaingia</b>	[enter repeatedly, slowly]
<b>leta</b>	[bring]	<b>letaleta</b>	[bring repeatedly, slowly]
<b>peleka</b>	[take]	<b>pelekapeleka</b>	[take repeatedly, slowly]
<b>lipa</b>	[pay]	<b>lipalipa</b>	[pay repeatedly, slowly]
<b>panga</b>	[arrange]	<b>pangapanga</b>	[arrange repeatedly, slowly]
<b>eleza</b>	[explain]	<b>elezaeleza</b>	[explain repeatedly, slowly]
<b>tafuta</b>	[search]	<b>tafutatafuta</b>	[search repeatedly, slowly]
<b>vaa</b>	[wear/put on]	<b>vaavaa</b>	[wear/put on repeatedly, slowly]



<b>choka</b>	[tired]	chokachoka	[tired repeatedly, slowly]
<b>agiza</b>	[order]	agizaagiza	[order repeatedly, slowly]
<b>potea</b>	[lost]	poteapotea	[lost repeatedly, slowly]
<b>poteza</b>	[lose]	potezapoteza	[lose repeatedly, slowly]
<b>chukua</b>	[take]	chukuachukua	[take repeatedly, slowly]
<b>fikiri</b>	[think]	fikirifikiri	[think repeatedly, slowly]
<b>taka</b>	[want]	takataka	[want repeatedly, slowly]
<b>beba</b>	[carry]	bebabeba	[carry repeatedly, slowly]
<b>pita</b>	[pass a place or exam]	pitapita	[pass a place or exam repeatedly, slowly]
<b>pumzika</b>	[rest]	pumzikapumzika	[rest repeatedly, slowly]
<b>shinda</b>	[win]	shindashinda	[win repeatedly, slowly]
<b>shindwa</b>	[lose]	shindwashindwa	[lose repeatedly, slowly]
<b>tumia</b>	[use]	tumiatumia	[use repeatedly, slowly]
<b>ngoja</b>	[wait]	ngojangoja	[wait repeatedly, slowly]
<b>bomoka</b>	[collapse]	bomokabomoka	[collapse repeatedly, slowly]
<b>chafuka</b>	[become dirty]	chafukachafuka	[become dirty repeatedly, slowly]
<b>gawa</b>	[divide]	gawagawa	[divide repeatedly, slowly]
<b>jaa</b>	[be full]	jaajaa	[be full repeatedly, slowly]
<b>kutana</b>	[meet]	kutanakutana	[meet repeatedly, slowly]
<b>pokea</b>	[receive]	pokeapokea	[receive repeatedly, slowly]
<b>tengeneza</b>	[make]	tengenezatengeneza	[make repeatedly, slowly]
<b>tisha</b>	[scare]	tishatisha	[scare repeatedly, slowly]
<b>toa</b>	[subtract, reduce, remove]	toatoa	[subtract, reduce, remove repeatedly, slowly]
<b>uza</b>	[sell]	uzauza	[sell repeatedly, slowly]
<b>nunua</b>	[buy]	nunuanunua	[buy repeatedly, slowly]
<b>vunja</b>	[break]	vunjavunja	[break repeatedly, slowly]
<b>weza</b>	[be able]	wezaweza	[be able repeatedly, slowly]
<b>geuka</b>	[turn]	geukageuka	[turn repeatedly, slowly]
<b>mwaga</b>	[pour]	mwagamwaga	[pour repeatedly, slowly]
<b>badili</b>	[change]	badilibadili	[change repeatedly, slowly]
<b>badilika</b>	[become changed]	badilikabadilika	[become changed repeatedly, slowly]
<b>ficha</b>	[hide]	fichaficha	[hide repeatedly, slowly]
<b>toboa</b>	[open / make a hole]	toboatoboa	[open / make a hole repeatedly, slowly]
<b>jenga</b>	[build]	jengajenga	[build repeatedly, slowly]
<b>panda</b>	[climb / board]	pandapanda	[climb / board repeatedly, slowly]

<b>endesha</b>	[to drive]	endeshaendesha	[to drive repeatedly, slowly]
<b>amua</b>	[decide]	amuaamua	[decide repeatedly, slowly]
<b>pata</b>	[get]	patapata	[get repeatedly, slowly]
<b>ita</b>	[call]	itaita	[call repeatedly, slowly]
<b>jua</b>	[know]	juajua	[know repeatedly, slowly]
<b>saidia</b>	[help]	saidiasaidia	[help repeatedly, slowly]
<b>iba</b>	[steal]	ibaiba	[steal repeatedly, slowly]
<b>gusa</b>	[touch]	gusagusa	[touch repeatedly, slowly]
<b>sali</b>	[pray]	salisali	[pray repeatedly, slowly]
<b>andaa</b>	[prepare]	andaaandaa	[prepare repeatedly, slowly]

## Sentence Formation

Mifano:

**1. Mimi ninasomasoma** kitabu.

[I am reading a book bit by bit.]

**2. Yeye anakulakula** chakula.

[He/She is eating food slowly/bit by bit.]

**3. Wao wanaimbaimba** nyimbo.

[They are singing a song over and over/slowly.]

**4. Wanawake wanazungumza harakaharaka.**

[Women are speaking fast.]

**5. Yeye alifanyafanya** kazi yake.

[He/She did his/her work repeatedly/slowly.]

## Zingatia [Note]

Nouns can also be reduplicated.

## B). Reduplicated Nouns

<b>mjini</b>	[city]	mjini mjini	
<b>msitu</b>	[forest]	msitu msitu	
<b>kitanda</b>	[bed]	kitanda kitanda	
<b>nyumbani</b>	[home]	nyumbani nyumbani	
<b>nguo</b>	[cloth]	nguo nguo	
<b>maji</b>	[water]	maji maji	
<b>magari</b>	[cars]	magari magari	
<b>moto</b>	[fire]	moto moto	
<b>vitabu</b>	[books]	vitabu vitabu	

chai	[tea]	chai chai	
kisu	[knife]	kisu kisu	

Sentence Formation	
Mifano:	
<b>1.</b> Kaeni mjini mjini. [You should stay in the <i>city</i> .]	
<b>2.</b> Tuliona misitu misitu. [We saw <i>forests</i> .]	
<b>3.</b> Mambo ya nyumbani nyumbani [Matters of <i>home</i> ]	
<b>4.</b> Alivaa nguo nguo. [He/She wore <i>clothes</i> .]	
<b>5.</b> Ardhi ilikuwa na maji maji. [The ground had <i>water</i> .]	
<b>6.</b> Kuna magari magari njiani. [There are cars on the <i>road</i> .]	

# Lesson 55:

## Subjunctive

### Subjunctive

Subjunctives are a polite form of the verb used in giving suggestions, giving directions and directives, and asking for things.

- A). Subjunctive
- B). Uses of the Subjunctive
- C). Words that trigger the Subjunctive
- D). Negating the Subjunctive
- E). Negation Uses

### A). Subjunctive

In Kiswahili, changing the final **-A** into **-E** in a verb will form the subjunctive.

Mifano:

1. Afadhali ulale sasa.

[It is better if you sleep now.]

2. Ni vizuri/muhimu mtoto apige mswaki.

[It is good/important that the child brushes his/her teeth.]

### Zingatia [Note]

Verb stems ending in vowels other than **-A** (e.g. *-fikiri* [think]) do not change when forming subjunctive.

Verb	Subjunctive	Meaning
fikiri	nifikiri	[I should think]
safiri	nisafiri	[I should travel]
fuzu	mfuzu	[you (pl.) should graduate]
shukuru	tushukuru	[we should be grateful/thankful]

## B). Uses of the Subjunctive

### 1. Making suggestions

- Astarehe. [He/She should relax/be comfortable.]
- Usamehe. [You should forgive.]

### 2. As the second part of two commands (to the same person)

- Fungua kitabu usome. [Open the book and read it.]
- Chukua kalamu na uandike barua. [Take a pen and write a letter.]

### 3. Giving indirect commands (for 'you' to do to another)

- Mfundishe Kiswahili. [Teach her/him Kiswahili.]
- Mwamkie mtoto. [Greet the child.]

### 4. Giving direct commands (for someone to do to another)

- Tuwafundishe Kimaasai. [Let's teach them the Maasai language.]
- Uwashukuru wazee. [You should thank the elders.]
- Wakisome kitabu. [They should read the book.]

## C). Words that trigger the Subjunctive

There are a number of words that require a subjunctive form to follow them: words which indicate **obligation** or **compulsion**.

<b>1. lazima</b>	[must]	<b>Lazima</b> uandike barua. [You must write a letter.]
<b>2. ili</b>	[so that]	Soma <b>ili</b> uelewe. [Read so that you may understand.]
<b>3. sharti</b>	[compels, behooves]	Ukitaka cha mvunguni <b>sharti</b> uiname. [If you want to reach for something under the bed, you should/it compels you to stoop for it.]
<b>4. bidi</b>	[requires, compels]	Itakub <b>idi</b> ujifunze Kiswahili. [It compels you to study Kiswahili.]

## D). Negation of the Subjunctive

To negate the subjunctive verb in Kiswahili, **-SI-** is inserted.

Mifano:

- |                        |                               |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Nionje              | [I should taste]              |
| Ni- <b>si</b> -onj-e   | [I should not taste]          |
| 2. Wacheze.            | [They should play.]           |
| Was <b>si</b> cheze.   | [They should not play.]       |
| 3. Tule.               | [We should eat.]              |
| Tu <b>si</b> le.       | [We should not eat.]          |
| 4. Achukue             | [He/She should take]          |
| As <b>si</b> chukue    | [He/She should not take]      |
| 5. Mzungumze.          | [You (pl.) should speak.]     |
| Ms <b>si</b> zungumze. | [You (pl.) should not speak.] |
| 6. Tufundishe.         | [We should teach.]            |
| Tu <b>si</b> fundishe. | [We should not teach.]        |

## E). Negation Uses

### 1. As the second part of two commands for the person spoken to

- Usipike chakula ule.  
[You should not cook the food and eat.]
- Msichukue karatasi mtunge mashairi.  
[You (pl.) should not take the papers and compose poems.]

### 2. Indirect commands (telling someone not to do something)

- Tusiwafundishe Kimaasai.  
[We should not teach them the Maasai language.]
- Usiwashukuru wazee.  
[You should not thank the elders.]
- Wasikisome kitabu.  
[They should not read the book.]

# Lesson 56:

## Business:

### Shopping, Buying and Selling

**Business:** [biashara:  
**Shopping,** ununuzi,  
**Buying and Selling** upigaji bei na uuzaji]

#### A). Business Vocabulary

akaunti	[account]
akiba	[savings]
bei	[cost; price]
ghali	[expensive]
rahisi	[cheap]
bei ghali	[expensive price]
bei rahisi	[cheap price]
benki	[bank]
bidhaa	[goods]
faida	[gain; profit]
hasara	[loss]
mali	[wealth]
mshahara; ujira	[salary]
mwajiriwa	[employee]
mwajiri; tajiri	[employer]
uza	[sell]
noti	[notes]
dola	[dollars]
pesa	[money]
shilingi	[shillings]
senti	[cents]
tajiri	[rich]
maskini	[poor]
saa za kazi	[business hours]
bei ya rejareja	[retail price]
bei ya jumla	[wholesale price]

**MIFANO ZAIDI:**

hazina	[treasure]
hisa	[shares]
hundi	[draft; check; money order]
maafikiano	[agreement]
malipo	[pay (noun)]
mapatano	[agreement]
mazao	[produce (noun)]
mkopo	[loan]
mnada	[stock exchange]
dalali; mnadi	[stockbroker]
taflisi	[bankruptcy]
muflisi	[bankrupt]
rasimali	[natural resources]
malighafi	[raw materials]
ujira	[wage]
pesa taslimu	[cash]
bwanyenye	[capitalist]
mwinyi	[lord]
akaunti ya akiba	[savings account]
akaunti ya amana	[deposit account]
akaunti ya hundi	[checking account]
bidhaa muhimu	[essential commodities]
haki halali	[square deal]
hali ya uchumi	[economic state]
hawala za serikali	[treasury bills]
kuhodhi bidhaa	[stockpiling]
mahitaji ya biashara	[business stock]
mapatano ya biashara	[transaction]
mpango wa biashara	[business plan]
mwenye hisa	[stockholder]
pigania bei	[bargain (verb)]
soko la hisa	[stock exchange]

**B). Buying and Selling Vocabulary**

bei	[price]
ghali	[expensive]
rahisi	[cheap]
bei nafuu	[fair price]
haipungui	[does not reduce]
hakuna faida/maslahi	[there is no profit]



ninataka	[I want]
shilingi	[shillings]
dola	[dollars]
mwuzaji	[shopkeeper]
mteja	[customer]
Twende!	[Let's go!]
Twende dukani!	[Let's go to the store!]
pesa, hela	[money]
Ghali sana!	[Too expensive!]
Bei ghali!	[The price is too high!]
punguza kidogo	[reduce a little]
ongeza kidogo	[add a little more]
bei rahisi sana!	[very cheap price!]
Jamani, Mungu wangu!	[Oh my god!]
Hapana! Tafadhali punguza bei!	[No! Please reduce the price!]
Haiwezekani!	[Utterly impossible!]
Acha bwana/mama!	[Stop it, don't be ridiculous, sir/madam!]
kedi	[card]
pesa taslimu	[cash money]
noti	[note]
cheki	[a check]
Utatumia cheki au kedi?	[Will you use a check or a card?]
Kedi ina pesa.	[The card has money.]
Kedi haina pesa.	[The card does not have money.]
akaunti	[account]
Akaunti ina pesa.	[The account has money]
Akaunti haina pesa.	[The account does not have money]
piga bei	[bargain]
kupiga bei	[to bargain]
Tafadhali punguza kidogo.	[Please reduce a little.]
Tafadhali ongeza kidogo.	[Please add a little.]
Bei haipungui.	[The price is not reducing/coming down.]
soko	[market]
duka	[store]
chete / gulio	[market day]
magenge / vibanda / viosk	[kiosks]
kichinjio	[slaughter house]
bucha	[butchery]
vitalu / chanja	[racks / stalls]
karo	[washbasin / sink / septic tank]

## C). International Currencies [Pesa za Kimataifa]

<b>Pesa [Currency]</b>		<b>Taifa [Nationality]</b>	
Dola	[Dollar]	Marekani / Kanada	[U.S.A / Canada]
Pauni	[Pound]	Uingereza / Misri / Siria	[Britain / Egypt / Syria]
Mak	[Mark]	Ujerumani	[Germany]
Franki / Faranga	[Franc]	Ufaransa / Uswizi / Ubeljiji	[France / Switzerland / Belgium]
Lira	[Lira]	Italia	[Italy]
Yeni	[Yen]	Ujapani	[Japan]
Krona	[Króna]	Uswidi/ Norwei	[Sweden / Norway]
Schiling	[Schilling]	Austria	[Austria]
Marka	[Marka]	Ufini	[Finland]
Peseta	[Peseta]	Uhispania	[Spain]
Rupia	[Rupee]	Bara Hindi	[India]
Rand	[Rand]	Afrika Kusini	[South Africa]
Shilingi	[Shilling]	Kenya / Uganda / Tanzania	[Kenya / Uganda / Tanzania]
Birr	[Birr]	Uhabeshi	[Ethiopia]
Kwacha	[Kwacha]	Zambia	[Zambia]
Dinari	[Dinar]	Aljeria / Libya / Tunisia	[Algeria / Libya / Tunisia]
Ougiya	[Oguiya]	Mauritania	[Mauritania]
Dirham	[Dirham]	Mauritania	[Mauritania]
Riale	[Rial]	Omani / Saudia	[Oman / Saudi Arabia]
Sedi	[Cedi]	Ghana	[Ghana]
Naira	[Naira]	Nigeria	[Nigeria]
Yuro	[Euro]	Bara Ulaya	[European Continent]

## Zingatia [Note]

leta	[bring]
nipe	[give me]
nunua	[buy]
uza	[sell]
ninataka	[I want]
punguza	[reduce; lower]
mteja	[customer]
haipungui	[does not reduce/lower]
vingi	[a lot]
mbalimbali	[various]
lipa	[pay]
mwuzaji	[shopkeeper]

## Mazungumzo [dialogue]Kupiga bei [bargaining]

### Talking with a friend and going shopping for various items.

**Halima:** Hujambo Halima?

**Anna:** Sijambo. Habari za asubuhi?

**Halima:** Salama tu, nyumbani hawajambo?

**Anna:** Hawajambo.

**Halima:** Leo, unakwenda duka la vitabu / duka la dawa / duka la viatu / dukani / sokoni kununua nini?

**Anna:** Ninakwenda kununua vitu / vichache / vidogo / vingi leo. Nitanutua matunda / vyakula / vinywaji mbalimbali kama maembe, mapapai, na machungwa. Wewe utanutua nini?

**Halima:** Mimi nitanunua vinywaji vichache vingi / vidogo / sana kama: soda, pombe, maji ya machungwa, na divai. Pia nitanunua vifaa vya shule.

**Anna:** Haya, twende dukani sasa!

\*At the shop/store\* [dukani]

**Mwuzaji :** Karibu! Karibu!

**Anna na Halima:** Asante.

**Mwuzaji:** Habari za asubuhi / mchana / jioni / kutwa / Habari gani / Shikamoo?]

**Anna na Halima:** Salama sana.

**Anna:** Daftari hili bei gani / Daftari bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi ishirini.

**Anna:** Na kitabu bei gani / Kitabu bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi kumi na tisa.

**Anna:** Vipi, bei haipungui? Bei ghali sana! Tafadhali punguza!

**Mwuzaji:** Bei haipungui. Bei ni rahisi sana/hakuna maslahi/faida. Tafadhali ongeza kidogo.

**Anna:** Ninataka / Nipe madaftari saba.

**Mwuzaji:** Vipi, hutaki kitabu?

**Anna:** Hapana. Leo sina pesa nyingi/sina pesa za kutosha/nyingi. Nina pesa kidogo sana. Mimi ni maskini.

**Mwuzaji:** Hapana / La! Wewe ni tajiri. Una mali nyingi. Tafadhali ongeza bei.

**Anna:** Kalamu bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi kumi

**Anna:** Na rula bei gani? / Rula bei gani?

**Mwuzaji:** Shilingi ishirini na tano

**Anna:** Jamani mungu wangu! Acha bwana / mama. Haiwezekani / Vipi, bei haipungui? Bei ghali sana.

**Mwuzaji:** Bei haipungui. Bei ni rahisi/hakuna maslahi/faida

**Anna:** Nipe / Ninataka kalamu tatu na rula nne.

**Mwuzaji:** Sawa. Tafadhali leta pesa?

**Anna:** Sawa!

**Mwuzaji:** Utalipaje? Utatumia kedi / cheki / au pesa taslimu?

**Anna:** Nitatumia pesa taslimu. Akaunti yangu haina pesa.

**Mwuzaji:** Sawa. Hamna shida. Tafadhali leta kedi.

**Anna:** Ndiyo hii.

**Mwuzaji:** Asante sana. Kwaheri, wewe ni mteja mzuri. Rudi tena. Tutaonana wiki kesho.

**Anna:** Kwaheri.

**Mwuzaji:** Kwaheri. Tutaonana baadaye. Inshallah.

**Anna:** *(You can continue the same dialogue with Anna buying fruits, drinks, spices, and foods by substituting them with the school items above).*

# Lesson 57:

## Comparatives

### Comparatives [vilinganishi]

#### A). Comparatives

##### 1. **KULIKO** [THAN; MORE THAN]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a). Juma ni mrefu <b>kuliko</b> Anna.             | [Juma is taller than Anna.]                  |
| b). Amerika ni nchi kubwa <b>kuliko</b> Tanzania. | [America is a bigger country than Tanzania.] |
| c). Ninapenda historia <b>kuliko</b> Kiswahili.   | [I like history more than Kiswahili.]        |

##### 2. **ZAIDI YA** [MORE THAN]

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda chai <b>zaidi ya</b> kahawa.     | [I like tea more than coffee.]      |
| b). Ninacheza tenisi <b>zaidi ya</b> besiboli. | [I play tennis more than baseball.] |

##### 3. **KUZIDI** [MORE THAN]

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| a). Ninapenda chakula <b>kuzidi</b> pombe. | [I like food more than alcohol.] |
| b). Ninacheza Jazz <b>kuzidi</b> Reggae.   | [I dance Jazz more than Reggae.] |

##### 4. **ZAIDI** [VERY]

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| a). Mtoto huyu ni mbaya <b>zaidi</b> .    | [This child is very bad.] |
| b). Msichana huyu ni mzuri <b>zaidi</b> . | [This girl is very good.] |

##### 5. **KUPITA KIASI** [EXTREMELY]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Brian ni mgonjwa <b>kupita kiasi</b> .               | [Brain is extremely sick.]                          |
| b). Stephanie ni mfupi <b>kupita kiasi</b> .             | [Stephanie is extremely short.]                     |
| c). Umeweka sukari nyingi kwa chai <b>kupita kiasi</b> . | [You have put extremely too much sugar in the tea.] |

## 6. KUSHINDA [BETTER THAN]

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a). Tofaa la April ni zuri <b>kushinda</b> la Emily.        | [April's apple is better than Emily's.]            |
| b). Heather in mzuri kwa Kiswahili <b>kushinda</b> mwalimu. | [Heather is better at Kiswahili than the teacher.] |

## 7. KAMA; SAWASAWA NA; MFANO WA; MITHILI YA; KI [LIKE]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Charles ana pesa nyingi <b>kama</b> njugu.                 | [Charles has a lot of money like peanuts.] |
| b). Charles ana pesa nyingi <b>sawasawa na/mfano wa</b> njugu. | [Charles has a lot of money like peanuts.] |

## 8. SANA [VERY]

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| a). Chai hii ni nzuri <b>sana</b> .     | [This tea is very good.]    |
| b). Gari la Anna ni ndogo <b>sana</b> . | [Anna's car is very small.] |

## 9. TU [ONLY; JUST; SO, SO]

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a). Ni nzuri <b>tu</b> .         | [It is just fine; It is so, so.] |
| b). Nina pesa kidogo <b>tu</b> . | [I have just a little money.]    |

## 10. TOFAUTI [DIFFERENT]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Gari langu ni <b>tofauti</b> na lako.          | [My car is different than yours.]            |
| b). Nyumba hii ni <b>tofauti</b> na ya kaka yangu. | [This house is different from my brother's.] |

## 11. FANANA NA [LOOK LIKE; ALIKE]

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| a). Juma anafanana na baba yake.       | [Juma looks like his father.]      |
| b). Nguo ya Anna inafanana na ya Jeni. | [Anna's clothes look like Jeni's.] |

## 12. FANANA KAMA [LOOK ALIKE; ALIKE]

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| a). Juma anafanana kama baba yake.       | [Juma looks like his father.]      |
| b). Nguo ya Anna inafanana kama ya Jeni. | [Anna's clothes look like Jeni's.] |

### 13. MBALI NA [APART FROM; ASIDE FROM]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). <b>Mbali na</b> kuwa mnene, Andrew ni mzembe sana. | [Apart from being fat, Andrew is very lazy.]                 |
| b). <b>Mbali na</b> kuchoka jana, sikuweza kulala.     | [Apart from being tired yesterday, I was not able to sleep.] |

### 14. SHABIHI [RESEMBLE; LOOK LIKE]

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| a). Kathy anam <b>shabihi</b> mama yake.  | [Kathy resembles her mother.]    |
| b). Daniel anam <b>shabihi</b> kaka yake. | [Daniel looks like his brother.] |

### 15. ONEKANA [LOOK LIKE]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Ina <b>onekana</b> kama kutanyesha kesho.                    | [It looks like it will rain tomorrow.]                          |
| b). Ina <b>onekana</b> kama tutasoma Kiswahili sana semesta hii. | [It looks like we will study a lot of Kiswahili this semester.] |

### 16. MSHABAHA [LOOK-A 'LIKE; RESEMBLANCE]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Kristi ni <b>mshabaha</b> wa nyanya yake.    | [Kristi is a look-alike of her grandmother.] |
| b). Televisheni hii ni <b>mshabaha</b> wa yangu. | [This television is a resemblance of mine.]  |

### 17. ZIDI [EXCEED; BECOME TOO MUCH; INCREASE MORE]

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a). Tabia ya mtoto huyu ime <b>zidi</b> .            | [This child's behavior is exceedingly bad.]              |
| b). Vita kati ya Libya na Amerika vime <b>zidi</b> . | [The war between Libya and America has become too much.] |

### 18. PITA [SURPASS: INCREASE MORE]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Tabia ya mtoto huyu ime <b>pita</b> kiasi. | [The child's behavior has become too much.] |
| b). Kuiba kwa Robert kume <b>pita</b> kiasi.   | [Robert's stealing has become too much.]    |

## 19. **SAMPULI** [KIND; TYPE; EXAMPLE; SAMPLE]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Wavulana <b>sampuli</b> hii ni wabaya sana.        | [These types of boys are very bad.]             |
| b). Ninapenda vitabu vya <b>sampuli</b> hii ya fasihi. | [I like these kinds/types of literature books.] |

## 20. **WAMOJA** [ONE]

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a). Mbuzi na kondoo ni wamoja.          | [The goats and sheep are one.]            |
| b). Familia ya Peter na Seth ni wamoja. | [The families of Peter and Seth are one.] |

## 21. **MAMOJA** [ONE; ALIKE; SAME]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Matunda ya mama na baba ni <b>mamoja</b> .   | [Mother and Father's fruits are one.]           |
| b). Magari ya Toyota na Honda ni <b>mamoja</b> . | [Toyota and Honda cars are the same/alike/one.] |

## 22. **VIMOJA** [ONE; ALIKE; THE SAME]

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a). Viti vya mkahawani na viti vya baani ni <b>vimoja</b> .                          | [The restaurant's and the bar's chairs are the same / alike.]   |
| b). Vyuho katika jimbo la Kansas na katika jimbo la Missouri are the same/alike/one. | [Colleges/Universities in the state of Kansas and in the state of Missouri are the same/ alike/ one.] |



# Lesson 58:

## Passive Verbs

### Passive Verbs

[mnyambuliko wa vitenzi]

### A). Forming Passive Verbs

When a Swahili verb stem has **-W-** suffixed to it, an active verb becomes a passive one.

Active Verbs		Passive Verbs	
1. ita	[call]	itwa	[be called]
2. sema	[say/speak]	semwa	[be said/spoken]
3. zungumza	[speak]	zungumzwa	[be spoken]
4. onya	[warn]	onywa	[be warned]
5. cheza	[play]	chezwa	[be played]
6. gawanya	[divide]	gawanywa	[be divided]
7. pika	[cook]	pikwa	[be cooked]
8. soma	[read]	somwa	[be read]
9. penda	[like]	pendwa	[be liked]
10. ona	[see]	onwa	[be seen]
11. tazama	[look/watch/ examine]	tazamwa	[be looked at/be watched/ be examined]
12. piga	[hit]	pigwa	[be beaten]
13. kula	[eat]	kulwa	[be eaten]
14. tupa	[know]	tupwa	[be known]
15. ruka	[jump]	rukwa	[be jumped]
16. fanya	[do]	fanywa	[be done]
17. andika	[write]	andikwa	[be written]
18. gonga	[hit]	gongwa	[be beaten]
19. shika	[hold]	shikwa	[be held]
20. omba	[ask/beg/pray]	ombwa	[be asked/be begged/ be prayed for]
21. cheka	[laugh]	chekwa	[be laughed at]

22. funza	[teach]	funz <b>wa</b>	[be taught]
23. fundisha	[teach]	fundish <b>wa</b>	[be taught]
24. maliza	[finish]	maliz <b>wa</b>	[be finished]
25. safisha	[clean]	safish <b>wa</b>	[be cleaned]
26. osha	[clean]	osh <b>wa</b>	[be cleaned]
27. anza	[start]	anz <b>wa</b>	[be started]
28. toka	[come from/ get out]	tok <b>wa</b>	[be coming from/ be getting out]
29. fika	[arrive]	fik <b>wa</b>	[be arrived]
30. leta	[bring]	let <b>wa</b>	[be brought]
31. peleka	[see]	pelek <b>wa</b>	[be seen]
32. lipa	[pay]	lip <b>wa</b>	[be paid]
33. panga	[arrange]	pang <b>wa</b>	[be arranged]
34. eleza	[explain]	elez <b>wa</b>	[be explained]
35. tafuta	[search]	tafut <b>wa</b>	[be sought]
36. agiza	[order]	agiz <b>wa</b>	[be ordered]
37. poteza	[lose]	potez <b>wa</b>	[be lost]
38. taka	[want]	tak <b>wa</b>	[be wanted]
39. beba	[carry]	beb <b>wa</b>	[be carried]
40. pita	[pass a place/exam]	pit <b>wa</b>	[be passing a place/exam]
41. shinda	[win]	shind <b>wa</b>	[be won]
42. ngoja	[wait]	ngoj <b>wa</b>	[be waiting]
43. tengeneza	[make]	Tengenez <b>wa</b>	[be made]
44. tisha	[scare]	tish <b>wa</b>	[be scared]
45. uza	[sell]	uz <b>wa</b>	[be sold]
46. vunja	[break]	vunj <b>wa</b>	[be broken]
47. weza	[be able]	wez <b>wa</b>	[be enabled]
48. mwaga	[pour]	mwag <b>wa</b>	[be poured]
49. ficha	[hide]	fich <b>wa</b>	[be hidden]
50. jenga	[build]	jeng <b>wa</b>	[be built]
51. panda	[climb/board]	pand <b>wa</b>	[be climbed/ boarded]
52. pata	[get]	pat <b>wa</b>	[be got]

## Sentences with Active verbs:

1. Ali atamwita mtoto.  
[Ali will call the child.]
2. Watanzania wanasema Kiswahili.  
[Tanzanian people speak Kiswahili.]
3. Wanigeria wanazungumza Kihausa.  
[Nigerians speak Hausa.]
4. Rajabu amesoma hadithi.  
[Rajabu has read a story.]
5. Mwalimu alicheza gita.  
[The teacher played the guitar.]
6. Ali atapika chakula.  
[Ali will cook the food.]

## Sentences with Passive verbs:

1. Mtoto ataitwa na Ali.  
[The child will be called by Ali.]
2. Kiswahili kinasemwa na Watanzania.  
[Kiswahili is spoken by Tanzanians.]
3. Kihausa kinazungumzwa na Wanigeria.  
[Hausa is spoken by Nigerians.]
4. Hadithi imesomwa na Rajabu.  
[The story has been read by Rajabu.]
5. Gita ilichezwa na mwalimu.  
[The guitar was played by the teacher.]
6. Chakula kitapikwa na Ali.  
[Food will be cooked by Ali.]

## B). Other Ways of Forming Passive Verbs

If the stem of the verb has one of the vowels [A, I, or U], then the passive form will use the suffix **-LIW-**. If the stem of the verb has one of the vowels [O or E], then the passive form will be **-LEW-**.

### Active Verbs

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. nun <u>u</u> a  | [buy]             |
| 2. pak <u>u</u> a  | [serve]           |
| 3. v <u>u</u> a    | [remove]          |
| 4. and <u>a</u> a  | [prepare]         |
| 5. v <u>a</u> a    | [put on]          |
| 6. kimb <u>i</u> a | [run]             |
| 7. to <u>a</u>     | [pull out]        |
| 8. ok <u>o</u> a   | [save]            |
| 9. le <u>a</u>     | [raise (a child)] |
| 10. <u>o</u> a     | [marry]           |
| 11. k <u>a</u> a   | [sit]             |

### Passive Verbs

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| nun <u>u</u> liwa  | [be bought]     |
| pak <u>u</u> liwa  | [be served]     |
| v <u>u</u> liwa    | [be removed]    |
| and <u>a</u> liwa  | [be prepared]   |
| valiwa             | [be put on]     |
| kimb <u>i</u> liwa | [be run]        |
| to <u>l</u> ewa    | [be pulled out] |
| ok <u>o</u> lewa   | [be saved]      |
| le <u>l</u> ewa    | [be raised]     |
| o <u>l</u> ewa     | [be married]    |
| kaliwa             | [be seated]     |

12. ing <u>i</u> a	[enter]	ingili <u>wa</u>	[be entered]
13. pote <u>a</u>	[be lost]	potele <u>wa</u>	[be lost]
14. chuk <u>u</u> a	[take]	chukuli <u>wa</u>	[be taken]
15. tum <u>i</u> a	[use]	tumi <u>wa</u>	[be used]
16. poke <u>a</u>	[receive]	pokele <u>wa</u>	[be recieved]
17. tob <u>o</u> a	[open/make a hole]	tobole <u>wa</u>	[be opened/ be made a hole]
18. am <u>u</u> a	[decide]	amuli <u>wa</u>	[be decided]

### Sentences with Active verbs:

1. Mama atanunua matunda.  
[Mother will buy fruits.]
2. Juma alioa Maria.  
[Juma married Maria.]
3. Mama ameandaa chakula.  
[Mother has prepared food.]

### Sentences with Passive verbs:

1. Matunda yatanunuliwa na mama.  
[The fruits will be bought by mother.]
2. Maria aliolewa na Juma.  
[Maria was married to Juma.]
3. Chakula kimeandaliwa na mama.  
[The food has been prepared by mother.]

## C). Borrowed Verbs in Passive Form

Most, but not all, borrowed verbs will **-IWA** in their passive forms.

Active Verbs		Passive Verbs	
1. rudi	[punish]	rudi <u>wa</u>	[be punished]
2. jaribu	[try]	jaribi <u>wa</u>	[be tried]
3. karibu	[close]	karibi <u>wa</u>	[be closer]
4. fikiri	[think]	fikiri <u>wa</u>	[be thought of]
5. keti	[sit]	keti <u>wa</u>	[be sat on]

# Lesson 59:

## Relative AMBA- and -O- of Reference

### Relative amba- [kirejeshi amba- and -O- of Reference na kirejeshi -O-]

To construct a relative clause (“that, which, who”), use **AMBA-**

**A).** Relative **AMBA-** and the Noun Classes

**B).** Relative **AMBA-** and Personal Pronouns

To construct a relative clause with an infix, use **-O-**

**C).** **-O-** of Reference

### A). Relative AMBA- and the Noun Classes

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	Relative AMBA-	KIREJESHI [relative pronoun]
M	mtu	ambaye	-ye
WA	watu	ambao	-o
KI	kiti	ambacho	-cho
VI	viti	ambavyo	-vyo
M	mkono	ambao	-o
MI	mikono	ambayo	-yo
JI	jani	ambalo	-lo
MA	majani	ambayo	-yo
N	nyota	ambayo	-yo
N	nyota	ambazo	-zo
U	ukuta	ambao	-o
ZI	kuta	ambazo	-zo
U	ulevi	ambao	-o
U	ulevi	ambao	-o
KU	kusoma	ambako	-ko
KU	kusoma	ambako	-ko
PA	pahali	ambapo	-po
PA	pahali	ambapo	-po
MU	mfukoni	ambamo	-mo
MU	mfukoni	ambamo	-mo

Mifano:	
1. watu ambao	[the people who/that]
2. kiti ambacho	[the chair which/that]
3. viti ambavyo	[the chairs which/that]
4. mti ambao	[the tree which/that]
5. miti ambayo	[the trees which/that]
6. kupika ambako	[the cooking which/that]
Sentensi:	
1. Mtu ambaye alikufa ni huyu. [The person who died is this one.]	
2. Watu ambao walikufa ni hawa. [The people who died are these ones.]	
3. Kiti ambacho kiliuzwa ni changu. [The chair that was sold is mine.]	
4. Viti ambavyo viliuzwa ni vyangu. [The chairs that were sold are mine.]	

B). Relative AMBA- and Personal Pronouns	
<u>Personal Pronoun</u>	<u>Relative AMBA-</u>
mimi	ambaye
sisi	ambao
wewe	ambaye
ninyi	ambao
yeye	ambaye
wao	ambao
Sentensi:	
1. Ni mimi <b>ambaye</b> nilisoma kitabu. Ni mimi <b>niliyesoma</b> kitabu.	It is I who studied the book. It is I who studied the book.
2. Ni sisi <b>ambao</b> tulisoma kitabu. Ni sisi <b>tuliosoma</b> kitabu.	It is we who studied the book. It is we who studied the book.
3. Ni wewe <b>ambaye</b> ulisoma kitabu. Ni wewe <b>uliyesoma</b> kitabu.	It is you who studied the book. It is you who studied the book.
4. Ni ninyi <b>ambao</b> mlisoma kitabu. Ni ninyi <b>mliosoma</b> kitabu.	It is you (pl.) who studied the book. It is you (pl.) who studied the book.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 5. Ni yeye <b>ambaye</b> alisoma kitabu. | It is he/she who studied the book. |
| Ni yeye <b>aliyesoma</b> kitabu.         | It is he/she who studied the book. |
| 6. Ni wao <b>ambao</b> walisoma kitabu.  | It is they who studied the book.   |
| Ni wao <b>waliosoma</b> kitabu.          | It is they who studied the book.   |

### C). -O- of Reference

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	KIREJESHI [relative pronoun]	-O- of REFERENCE
M	mtu	<b>-ye-</b>	anayecheza
WA	watu	<b>-o-</b>	wanaocheza
KI	kiti	<b>-cho-</b>	kinachocheza
VI	viti	<b>-vyo-</b>	vinavyocheza
M	mkono	<b>-o-</b>	unaoumwa
MI	mikono	<b>-yo-</b>	inayoumwa
JI	jani	<b>-lo-</b>	linalokatwa
MA	majani	<b>-yo-</b>	yanayokatwa
N	nyota	<b>-yo-</b>	inayopendeza
N	nyota	<b>-zo-</b>	zinazopendeza
U	ukuta	<b>-o-</b>	unaoharibiwa
ZI	kuta	<b>-zo-</b>	zinazoharibiwa
U	ulevi	<b>-o-</b>	unaosaidia
U	ulevi	<b>-o-</b>	unaosaidia
KU	kusoma	<b>-ko-</b>	kunakoendeleza
KU	kusoma	<b>-ko-</b>	kunakoendeleza
PA	pahali	<b>-po-</b>	panapochezewa
PA	pahali	<b>-po-</b>	panapochezewa
MU	mfukoni	<b>-mo-</b>	mnamoonwa
MU	mfukoni	<b>-mo-</b>	mnamoonwa

# Lesson 60:

## Quantifiers -OTE and -O-OTE

**-OTE** [all, entire, whole]

The usage of **-OTE** varies from one noun class to another.

### A). -OTE

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	Quantifier -OTE	Meaning
M	msichana	-----	-----
WA	wasichana	<b>wote</b>	all girls
KI	kijiko	<b>chote</b>	entire/whole spoon
VI	vijiko	<b>vyote</b>	all spoons
M	mkoba	<b>wote</b>	entire/whole bag
MI	mikoba	<b>yote</b>	all bags
JI	jina	<b>lote</b>	entire/whole name
MA	majina	<b>yote</b>	all names
N	nguo	<b>yote</b>	entire/whole cloth
N	nguo	<b>zote</b>	all cloths
U	ufunguo	<b>wote</b>	entire/whole key
U	funguo	<b>zote</b>	all keys
U	uzuri	<b>wote</b>	all goodness
U	uzuri	<b>wote</b>	all goodness
KU	kuimba	<b>kwote/kote</b>	all of the singing
KU	kuimba	<b>kwote/kote</b>	all of the singing
PA	pahali/mahali	<b>pote</b>	entire/whole place
PA	pahali/mahali	<b>pote</b>	entire/whole place
MU	sokoni	<b>mwote/mote</b>	whole/entire market area
MU	sokoni	<b>mwote/mote</b>	whole/entire market area



## Sentence Formation

Sentensi:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>1.</b> Kiasi <b>chote</b> kimeoza.<br>Viasi <b>vyote</b> vimeoza.         | [The entire potato is rotten.]<br>[All the potatoes are rotten.]     |
| <b>2.</b> Gazeti <b>lote</b> limepotea.<br>Magazeti <b>yote</b> yamepotea.   | [The entire newspaper is lost.]<br>[All the newspapers are lost.]    |
| <b>3.</b> Marashi <b>yote</b> yananukia.<br>Marashi <b>yote</b> yananukia.   | [All the perfume smells good.]<br>[All the perfume smells good.]     |
| <b>4.</b> Nyumba <b>yote</b> imeanguka.<br>Nyumba <b>zote</b> zimeanguka.    | [The entire house has fallen.]<br>[All the houses have fallen.]      |
| <b>5.</b> Chakula <b>chote</b> kimepikwa.<br>Vyakula <b>vyote</b> vimepikwa. | [All the food has been cooked.]<br>[All the foods have been cooked.] |
| <b>6.</b> Ninapenda wanyama <b>wote</b> .                                    | [I like all animals.]  |
| <b>7.</b> Ninapenda pombe <b>yote</b> .<br>Ninapenda pombe <b>zote</b> .     | [I like the entire alcohol.]<br>[I like all/all types of alcohol.]   |
| <b>8.</b> Tulinunua nguo <b>zote</b> dukani.                                 | [We bought all the clothes at the store.]                            |
| <b>9.</b> Gari langu <b>lote</b> limeharibika.                               | [My whole/entire car has been destroyed.]                            |
| <b>10.</b> Rafiki zangu <b>wote</b> ni wazuri.                               | [All my friends are good.]   |

**11.** Tulienda mkahawani na familia **yote**.

[We went to the restaurant with the entire/whole/all of the family.]

**12.** Tumerudi / tumerejea na familia **yote**.

[We have returned/come back with the entire/ whole/all of the family.]

## -O-OTE [any]

The usage of **-O-OTE** varies from one noun class to another.

### B). -O-OTE

NGELI [noun class]	JINA [noun]	Quantifier <b>-OTE</b>	Quantifier <b>-O-OTE</b>	Meaning
M	kasuku	-	yeyote	any parrot
WA	kasuku	wote	wowote	any parrots
KI	kiazi	chote	chochote	any potato
VI	viazi	vyote	vyovyote	any potatoes
M	mmea	wote	wowote	any plant
MI	mimea	yote	yoyote	any plants
JI	jina	lote	lolote	any name
MA	majina	yote	yoyote	any names
N	nguo	yote	yoyote	any cloth
N	nguo	zote	zozote	any clothes
U	uso	wote	wowote	any face
U	nyuso	zote	zozote	any faces
U	urafiki	wote	wowote	any friendship
U	urafiki	wote	wowote	any friendships
KU	kulala	kwote/kote	kwokwote/kokote	any sleeping
KU	kulala	kwote/kote	kwokwote/kokote	any sleeping
PA	pahali/mahali	pote	popote	any place
PA	pahali/mahali	pote	popote	any places
MU	ofisini	mwote/mote	mwomwote/momote	any office
MU	ofisini	mwote/mote	mwomwote/momote	any offices

# Sentence Formation

Sentensi:

1. Nipe kiasi **chochote**.

[Give me any potato.]

Tupe viazi **vyovyote**.

[Give us any potatoes.]

2. Mwanafunzi atanunua gazeti **lolote**.

[The student will buy any newspaper.]

Wanafunzi watanunua magazeti **yoyote**.

[The students will buy any newspapers.]

3. Marashi **yoyote** yatafaa.

[Any perfume will do.]

4. Nyumba **yoyote** itajengwa.

[Any house will be built.]

Nyumba **zozote** zitajengwa.

[Any houses will be built.]

5. Chakula **chochote** kitaliwa na wageni.

[Any food will be eaten by guests.]

Vyakula **vyovyote** vitaliwa na wageni.

[Any foods will be eaten by guests.]

6. Ninapenda mchezo **wowote**.

[I like any sport.]

Ninapenda michezo **yoyote**.

[I like any sports.]

7. Sipendi chakula **chochote**.

[I don't like any food.]

Sipendi vyakula **vyovyote**.

[I don't like any foods.]

8. Ninapenda pahali **popote**.

[I like any place.]

9. Nitaenda pahali **popote** wakati wa likizo.

[I will go to any place during the holiday.]

10. Ninataka kuishi pahali **popote** Marekani.

[I want to live in any place in America.]

- 11.** Nitaishi pahali **popote** Marekani.  
[I will live in any place in America.]
- 12.** Nitafanya kazi pahali / mahali **popote** Marekani baada ya shule.  
[I will work in any place in America after school.]
- 13.** Mwanafunzi **yeyote** atafanya mtihani.  
[Any student will do the exam.]  
Wanafunzi **wowote** watafanya mtihani.  
[Any students will do the exam.]

# Lesson 61:

## Conjunctions

### Conjunctions [viunganishi]

#### A). Conjunctions

ama	[or; not]
au	[or]
badala ya	[instead of]
bali	[but rather; on the contrary]
basi	[then; well; so; that's all]
bila	[without]
ijapo	[even if]
ila	[except]
ili; ili kwamba	[so as; so that; in order to]
ingawa	[although; even though]
juu ya hayo	[moreover]
kama	[if; around; like]
kama kwamba; kana kwamba	[as if]
kisha	[and then; moreover]
kusudi	[to; in order to]
kwa	[for; to; by; with]
kwa ajili ya	[because of]
kwa hiyo; kwa hivyo; kwa vile	[so; because of that; in sequence]
kwa kuwa	[because]
kwa maana ya	[because]
kwa sababu (ya); kwani	[because]
kwamba; kuwa	[that]
lakini; walakini	[but; however]
na	[and; with]
pamoja (na)	[with; together with]
pamoja na hayo; juu ya hayo; zaidi ya hayo; juu ya hivyo	[moreover]
tena	[again; moreover]
wala	[either; neither]
yaani	[that is to say]
pia	[also]

# Sentence Formation

Mifano:

## 1. ama [or; not]

- a).** Utanunua ndizi **ama** viazi.  
[You will buy bananas or potatoes.]
- b).** Unataka kucheza **ama** kupumzika?  
[Do you want to play or rest?]

## 2. au [or]

- a).** Leta mkate mweusi **au** mweupe.  
[Bring black or white bread.]
- b).** Nunua shati jekundu **au** jeupe.  
[Buy the red or the white shirt.]

## 3. badala ya [instead of]

- a).** Alikwenda Michigan **badala ya** kwenda Maryland.  
[He/She went to Michigan instead of going to Maryland.]
- b).** Anaona televisheni **badala ya** kucheza.  
[He/She is watching television instead of playing.]

## 4. bali [but rather; on the contrary]

- a).** Kusema Kiswahili si vigumu, **bali** ni rahisi.  
[Speaking Kiswahili is not difficult, but rather it is easy.]
- b).** Bei ya ndege si ghali, **bali** ni rahisi.  
[The price of the airplane is not expensive, on the contrary it is cheap.]

## 5. basi [then; well; so; that's all]

- a).** Nilitaka sana kuona wanyama, **basi** nilifika hapa.  
[I really wanted to see the animals, so I arrived here.]
- b).** Nilitaka sana kula pizza, **basi** nilienda mkahawani.  
[I really wanted to eat pizza, so I went to the restaurant.]

## 6. bila [without]

a). Basi lilifika **bila** mama.

[The bus arrived without mother.]

b). Alikwenda Tanzania **bila** kuona Tanga.

[He/She went to Tanzania without seeing Tanga.]

## 7. ijapo [even if]

a). **Ijapo** nitakufa, sitakubali uwongo.

[Even if I die, I will not accept lies.]

b). **Ijapo** mimi ni maskini siwezi kulala njaa.

[Even if I am a poor person, I cannot sleep hungry.]

## 8. ila [except]

a). Wanafunzi hawa ni wazuri, **ila** ni huyu.

[These students are good, except this one.]

b). Watu wote wamefika **ila** mwalimu.

[Everyone has arrived except the teacher.]

c). Kila mtu amelala **ila** baba.

[Each person has slept except the father.]

## 9. ili; ili kwamba [so as; so that; in order to]

a). Ninapika **ili** nile.

[I am cooking in order to eat.]

b). Ninakwenda baharini **ili** ninunue samaki.

[I am going to the ocean in order to buy fish.]

## 10. ingawa [although; even though]

a). Amefika kazini **ingawa** mtoto wake ni mgonjwa.

[He has arrived at work even though his child is sick.]

b). Anapenda familia yake **ingawa** yeye ni maskini.

[He likes his family even though he/she is poor.]

### 11. juu ya hayo [moreover]

- a). Chakula ni haba, **juu ya hayo** ni ghali mno.  
[Food is scarce, moreover it is very expensive.]
- b). Mwalimu ni mzuri, **juu ya hayo** ni mpole.  
[The teacher is good, moreover he is gentle.]

### 12. kama [if; around; like]

- a). Ninahitaji televisheni **kama** hii.  
[I need a television like this one.]
- b). Utakaa Florida kwa muda gani? - **Kama** miezi mitatu.  
[You will live in Florida for how long? - Around three months.]

### 13. kama kwamba; kana kwamba [as if]

- a). Alicheza pamoja na simba **kana kwamba** ni paka.  
[She played together with the lion as if it were a cat.]
- b). Alilia **kana kwamba** ni mtoto.  
[She cried as if she were a child.]

### 14. kisha [moreover]

- a). Mwanafunzi huyu hasomi shuleni, **kisha** hajui kuandika.  
[This student does not read in school, moreover he does not know how to write.]
- b). Nesi huyu ni mfupi **kisha** ni mwembamba.  
[This nurse is short, moreover he/she is thin.]

### 15. kusudi [to; in order to]

- a). Amejenga nyumba kubwa **kusudi** kufanya hoteli.  
[He/She has built the big house in order to make a hotel.]
- b). Amefanya utafiti **kusudi** ya kupata digrii.  
[He/She has done the research in order to get the degree.]



## 16. kwa [for; to; by; with]

a). Anafanya kazi **kwa** Bwana Manji. (*For*)

[He/She works for Mr. Manji.]

b). Kata nanasi **kwa** kisu! (*With*)

[Cut the pineapple with a knife!]

c). Mimi huenda chuoni **kwa** miguu. (*By*)

[I go to school by foot.]

d). Nitakula wali **kwa** mchuzi. (*With*)

[I will eat rice with soup.]

## 17. kwa ajili ya [because of]

a). **Kwa ajili ya** kula chakula kidogo sikulala usiku.

[Because of eating a little food, I did not sleep at night.]

b). Tulisoma sana jana **kwa ajili ya** mtihani.

[We studied a lot yesterday because of the exam.]

## 18. kwa hiyo; kwa hivyo; kwa vile [so; because of that; in consequence]

a). Sikwenda darasani, **kwa hivyo** sikufanya mtihani.

[I did not go to class, so I did not do the exam.]

b). Sikupata habari **kwa hivyo** sikwenda filamuni.

[I did not get news, so I did not go to the film.]

## 19. kwa kuwa [because]

a). Hatukulala **kwa kuwa** mvua ilinyesha sana.

[We did not sleep because the rain fell heavily.]

b). Hatukucheza **kwa kuwa** gari liliharibika.

[We did not play because the car was wrecked.]

## 20. kwa maana ya [because]

a). Hatukula **kwa maana ya** ukosefu wa chakula.

[We did not eat because of a lack of food.]

b). Hatukulala **kwa maana ya** karamu.

[We did not sleep because of the party.]

## 21. kwa sababu ; kwani [because]

- a). Nilienda jikoni **kwa sababu** nilitaka kula chakula.  
[I went to the kitchen because I wanted to eat food.]
- b). Nilienda darasani **kwa sababu** nilitaka kusoma Kiswahili.  
[I went to class because I wanted to study Kiswahili.]

## 22. kwamba; kuwa [that]

- a). Ninaona **kwamba** / **kuwa** mnyama huyu ni mkali.  
[I see that this animal is fierce.]
- b). Mwanafunzi anasema **kwamba** / **kuwa** daftari lake limepotea.  
[The student is saying that his/her notebook is lost.]

## 23. lakini; walakini [but; however]

- a). Ninapenda tenisi **lakini** sipendi kucheza hoki.  
[I like tennis, but I do not like to play hockey.]
- b). Ruth anacheka **lakini** Tom analia.  
[Ruth is laughing, but Tom is crying.]

## 24. na [and; with]

- a). Nitanunua kalamu **na** daftari dukani.  
[I will buy pens and a notebook at the store.]
- b). Ninapenda kunywa chai **na** kahawa.  
[I like to drink tea and coffee.]

## 25. pamoja (na) [with; together with]

- a). Rafiki yangu amekuja **pamoja na** watoto wake.  
[My friend has come with her children.]
- b). Nilienda dukani **pamoja na** mama yangu.  
[I went to the store together with my mother.]

## 26. pamoja na hayo; juu ya hayo; zaidi ya hayo [moreover; besides]

- a). Hana tiketi ya ndege, **zaidi ya hayo** hana fedha.  
[He/She does not have a plane ticket; moreover he/she does not have the money.]
- b). Hana mke, **zaidi ya hayo** hana watoto.  
[He/She does not have a wife; moreover he/she does not have children.]

## 27. tena [again; moreover]

- a). Sijui mtoto huyu, **tena** sijamwona.  
[I do not know this child, moreover I have not seen him/her.]
- b). Tafadhali rudia **tena**.  
[Please repeat again.]

## 28. wala [either; neither; nor]

- a). Hakuna mchele **wala** unga.  
[There is no uncooked rice nor flour.]
- b). Sikuwaona wanafunzi, **wala** mwalimu wao.  
[I did not see the students, nor their teacher.]

## 29. yaani [that is to say]

- a). Huyu ni mjomba **yaani** kaka wa mama.  
[This is the uncle, that is to say mother's brother.]
- b). Huyu ni profesa wangu **yaani** mwalimu wangu.  
[This is my professor that is to say my teacher.]
- c). Huyu ni baba wa mama yangu, **yaani** babu yangu.  
[This is the father of my mother, that is to say my grandfather.]

## 30. pia [also]

- a). Niliimba nyimbo na **pia** nilicheza sana.  
[I sang songs and I also played a lot.]
- b). Nilikula chakula kingi na **pia** nilikunywa pombe sana.  
[I ate a lot of food and I also drank a lot of alcohol.]

### 31. **ijapokuwa** [even though; although]

a). Nitaenda shuleni **ijapokuwa** mimi ni mgonjwa.

[I will go to school even though I am sick.]

b). Nitapumzika sana **ijapokuwa** nina kazi nyingi ya nyumbani.

[I will rest a lot even though I have a lot of homework.]

### 32. **licha ya** [besides; apart from; in addition]

a). **Licha ya** kuanguka mitihani wake, John huwa haendi darasani.

[Besides failing his exams, John does not go to class.]

b). **Licha ya** kufika mapema, hakuweza kumwona mfalme.

[Besides arriving early, he was not able to see the king.]

### 33. **mradi; alimradi** [provided]

a). Atapita mitihani yake **mradi / alimradi** asome kwa bidii.

[He/She will pass his/her exams, provided he/she works hard.]

b). Ataenda kazini **mradi** anunue gari.

[He/She will go to work provided he/she buys a car.]

### 34. **isipokuwa** [except; except for; if it weren't for]

a). Ningeenda Las Vegas **isipokuwa** sina pesa.

[I would have gone to Las Vegas, except I don't have money.]

b). Nangepika chakula leo, **isipokuwa** nina wageni.

[I would have cooked food today, except I have visitors.]

### 35. **laiti** [if only I knew; if I had known]

a). **Laiti** ningejua yeye ni mbaya, nisingeenda kwa nyumba yake.

[Had I known he/she was bad, I would not have gone to his/her house.]

b). **Laiti** ningejua kuwa kupata digrii ni kazi nyingi, nisingeenda chuo kikuu.

[Had I known that getting a degree is hard work, I would not have gone to university.]

### 36. ilhali [whereas]

- a). Anasema mimi ni mbaya, **ilhali** yeye ana kichaa kuliko mimi.  
[He/She claims/says I am bad, whereas he/she is more crazy than me.]
- b). Anasema mwalimu hajui kufundisha, **ilhali** yeye huwa husomi baada ya shule.  
[He/She claims/says the teacher does not know how to teach, whereas he/she does not study after school.]

### 37. fauka ya [apart from that; besides]

- a). Anapenda kuimba, **fauka ya** hayo ni mchezeji mzuri.  
[He/She likes singing, besides that he/she is a good dancer.]
- b). Hapendi kuenda mkahawani, **fauka ya** hayo hapendi kula sana.  
[He/She does not like to go to the restaurant, besides that he/she does not like eating.]

### 38. lau [if only]

- a). Nitaenda filamuni **lau** utanunua tiketi.  
[I will go to the movie if only you buy the ticket.]
- b). Nitalala hotelini **lau** bei ikiwa nafuu.  
[I will sleep at the hotel if only the price is fair.]

### 39. chambilecho [as said / written by]

- a). **Chambilecho** kaka yangu, mambo gani ya ajabu / kichaa dunia hii ya leo; kila kitu ni sawa.  
[As written / said by my brother, there are no crazy things in today's world; everything is the same.]

### 40. kwa mujibu [according]

- a). **Kwa mujibu** alivyonielea mimi, yule si mtoto wake ni mtoto wa mke wake.  
[According to the way he/she explained to me, that is not his child, it is his wife's child.]
- b). **Kwa mujibu** alivyoomba, yeye ni mtu ambaye anapenda Mungu sana.  
[According to the way he/she prayed, he/she is a person who loves God alot.]

#### 41. seuze; sembuse

**[let alone; much less; to say nothing of]**

a). Nilimpiga Mike Tyson, **seuze** wewe.

[I beat Mike Tyson, let alone you.]

b). Nimesafiri pahali pengi duniani, **seuze** Marekani.

[I have travelled to many places in the world, let alone America.]

#### 42. kwa niaba ya [on behalf of]

a). Nenda / enda huko karamuni **kwa niaba** yangu.

[Go to the party on my behalf.]

b). Nitaenda mkutanoni **kwa niaba** ya meneja.

[I will go to the meeting on behalf of the manager.]

#### 43. aghlabu; aghalabu [usually; more often; as a rule]

a). **Aghalabu** mvua huanza mwezi wa Machi, lakini safari hii, ninaona imechelewa.

[It usually rains in March, but this time I see it is late.]

b). **Aghalabu** mimi hulala usiku kila saa nne.

[I usually sleep at 10 pm at night.]

#### 44. minghairi [except; without]

a). Hatuwezi kufanya kazi ya nyumbani, **minghairi** ya kungoja jibu la mwalimu.

[We cannot do the homework, except to wait for the teacher's response.]

b). Hawezi kuuza nyumba, **minghairi** ya kungoja wanunuzi.

[He/She cannot sell the house, except to wait for the customers.]

#### 45. bila ya [without]

a). Tuliondoka **bila ya** kaka yangu.

[We left without my brother.]

b). Nilikunywa chai **bila ya** maziwa.

[I drank tea without milk.]

#### 46. baada ya [after]

a). Tulienda mkahawani **baada ya** darasa.

[We went to the restaurant after class.]

b). Nililala **baada ya** chakula cha jioni.

[I slept after dinner.]

#### 47. kabla ya [before]

a). Nilizungumza na mwalimu **kabla ya** darasa.

I talked to the teacher before class.

b). Nilifika darasani **kabla ya** John.

[I arrived to class before John.]

#### 48. ikiwa [if]

a). **Ikiwa** nitaenda Uchina, nitakula chakula cha kichina.

[If I go to China, I will eat Chinese food.]

b). **Ikiwa** nitapita mtihani, nitapata digrii yangu.

[If I will pass the exam, I will get my degree.]

#### 49. mintarafu [concerning; with regard to]

a). Kwa **mintarafu** ya habari tulizopata leo, baba amefika leo.

[According to the news we received today, my father arrived today.]

b). Kwa **mintarafu** ya habari tulizoona leo kwenye televisheni, kuna njaa nyingi nchini Sudan.

[According to the news we watched today on television, there is a lot of famine in Sudan.]

#### 50. kwa ajili ya [because of; in order to]

a). Nimefika hapa **kwa ajili ya** kumwona malkia.

I have arrived here in order to see the queen.

b). Ninasoma **kwa ajili ya** mitihani.

[I am studying because of the examinations.]

# Lesson 62:

## Letter Writing

### Letter Writing [kuandika barua]

Just like in English, in Kiswahili we have two forms of letter writing:

- A). Friendly letter
- B). Formal/Official letter

### A). Friendly Letter [barua ya kirafiki/kidugu/kimapenzi]

Key parts of a friendly letter:

[sehemu kuu za barua ya kirafiki/kidugu/kimapenzi]:

1. jina la anayeandika [name of the sender]

2. anwani ya mwandikaji [address of the sender]

Watu wengi huko Afrika ya Mashariki hupokea barua zao kutoka **ofisini**, **kanisani**, au **posta**. Watu wachache sana hupokea barua nyumbani. Kwa hivyo anuani nyingi hutumia **sanduku la posta**, yaani **S.L.P.**

3. tarehe [date]

Kumbuka kwamba watu huandika siku kwanza, halafu mwezi, halafu mwaka. Hawaandiki kama hapa Marekani (**mwezi-siku-mwaka**).

4. jina la anayeandikiwa [name of the receiver]

5. salamu; maamkio [greetings]

Kwa kawaida watu huanza kwa kumtaja mtu wa kusoma barua hiyo:

Ndugu: brother, sister, relative, closer than just a friend.

Mpendwa mama, Mama Mpendwa, Mama: Dear mother.

Mpendwa Baba, Baba mpendwa, Dada, Rafiki, Mwalimu, Yohana, n.k.

Mpenzi Anna, Juma- hutumika kwa wapenzi, au bwana na bibi.

Watu hupenda kueleza kwanza habari za afya, za jamaa, za nyumbani, n.k. kabla ya kueleza mambo mengine.



**6. sehemu kuu****[body]**

Sehemu kuu ya barua hueleza sababu za kuandika barua na habari muhimu za barua hiyo. Watu wengi hupenda kuanza sehemu kuu ya barua kwa kuandika:

Sababu/nia ya kuandika barua hii ni...

The purpose of this letter is....

Si lazima kuanza hivyo. Unaweza kuanza tu sehemu hii moja kwa moja.

**7. hitimisho; tamati****[conclusion]**

Kuna njia nyingi za kumaliza/kukamilisha barua, kwa mfano:

- i. Wasalaam
- ii. Ni mimi, .....
- iii. Kakako, ....
- iv. Kakako mpendwa, ....
- v. Wako, ....
- vi. Akupendaye...
- vii. Anayekukumbuka...
- viii. Rafiki wa kufa na kupona...

**8. saini; sahihi****[signature]**

Sahihi au saini au jina lako.

**B). Formal/Official Letter**

Key parts of a formal/official letter:

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. jina la anayeandika   | [name of the sender]    |
| 2. anwani ya mwandikaji  | [address of the sender] |
| 3. tarehe                | [date]                  |
| 4. jina la anayeandikiwa | [name of the receiver]  |
| 5. salamu; maamkio       | [greetings]             |
| 6. sehemu kuu            | [body]                  |
| 7. hitimisho; tamati     | [conclusion]            |
| 8. saini; sahihi         | [signature]             |

## Mfano 1 [Example 1]

### **Mfano wa barua ya kirafiki/kindugu/kimapenzi** **[example of a friendly letter]**

Shule ya Sekondari ya Nakawale,  
Nakawale-Mkongo,  
S.L.P. 682,  
ARUSHA  
Tanzania  
29- 7-2010

Ndugu,

Hujambo? Mimi sijambo.

Bila shaka unafikiri. “Ni nani ameniandikia barua kutoka Tanzania?” Jina langu ni Kamwale. Mwalimu Peter Ojiambo alinipa anuani yako. Alisema kwamba unataka rafiki wa kalamu. Mimi hupenda sana kuandika barua. Kwa hivyo, nimekuandikia barua hii ili kuanza urafiki wa kalamu na wewe.

Mimi ni mwanafunzi katika shule hii. Ninasoma mwaka wa nne sasa. Ninapenda sana masomo kama historia, kemia, Kiingereza na sayansi. Shule yetu ni ndogo sana. Nitafanya mtihani wa mwisho mwezi wa kumi na moja. Ninafikiri nitaweza kupata nafasi katika Chuo Kikuu na kusoma masomo juu ya wanyama. Ninataka kuwa daktari wa wanyama.

Mwalimu Ojiambo aliniambia kwamba unataka kutembelea Tanzania mwaka ujao. Kama utatembelea sehemu hizi, pengine tutaweza kuonana. Tutaweza kutembelea mbuga la wanyama la Mikumi kuona wanyama. Kuna wanyama wengi sana. Kama unataka msaada wa mipango ya safari ninaweza kukusaidia. Kaka yangu anafanya kazi na Tour Operators. Yeye anajua sana juu ya safari hapa nchini.

Nitaandika zaidi nitakapopata barua yako.

Wasalaam,  
Kamwali Kapili

## Mfano 2 [Example 2]

### **Mfano wa barua ya kirafiki/kindugu/kimapenzi** **[example of a friendly letter]**

Shule ya Sekondari ya Nakawale,  
Nakawale-Mkongo,  
S.L.P 682,  
ARUSHA  
Tanzania  
Julai 29, 2010

Mpendwa Stella,  
Hujambo? Mimi sijambo.

Natumaini/Natumai uko salama na unaendelea vizuri/vyema na masomo yako. Mimi huku sina neno. Kila kitu ni shwari na masomo yanaendelea vizuri. Hali ya anga huku ni safi sana, kuna mvua chache, baridi ndogo, upepo kiasi na joto la kati. Habari za hali ya anga Urbana-Champaign?

Baada ya salamu ningependa kuchukua nafasi/fursa hii kukueleza/kukufahamisha kuwa/kwamba nitasafiri Marekani tarehe kumi, mwezi wa kumi, mwaka huu. Nitatumia ndege ya shirika la Delta. Nitafurahi kukutana na nawe/na wewe na kuweza kupiga gumzo kuhusu maisha ya Marekani.

Sina mengi. Tutaongea sana mwezi wa kumi nikifika Marekani. Wasalimu/Wasalimie baba, mama na ndugu wote.

Ni mimi,  
Kamwali/Rafiki/Rafiki yako/Rafiki mpendwa,  
Kamwali

## Mfano 3 [Example 3]

### Jinsi ya kuandika e-meli/barua pepe [How to write an e-mail]

Hamjambo,

Habari za leo? Ninatumaini/ninatumai kuwa wote mko salama. Mimi niko salama na kila kitu ni safi na shwari. Ningependa kuwalika kwenye sherehe/karamu ya siku ya kuzaliwa kwangu. Sherehe itafanyika siku ya Jumamosi, tarehe mbili, mwezi wa nane/Agosti, mwaka wa elfu mbili na kumi. Sherehe itaanza saa kumi na mbili jioni na itaendelea hadi saa nne usiku.

Mimi ninaishi mji wa Urbana, mtaa wa Green, karibu na Wal-Mart. Nambari ya nyumba yangu ni mia sita na tano na nambari yangu ya simu ni mbili, moja, saba, tatu, nne, nne, sifuri, tano, nane, nane.

Una uhuru wa kuleta vyakula vyovyote na vinywaji vyovyote kwenye karamu. Njoo wote tusherekee. Kutakuwa na muziki motomoto, vyakula vizuri na vinywaji vingi.

Tutaonana Jumamosi.

Asante/Kwaheri,

Terry

# Lesson 63:

## Modifiers -INGI and -ENGINE

### A). -INGI [many; a lot]

The noun class marker is attached to **-INGI** to form the word for [many, a lot]. Since **-INGI** can only refer to plural things, noun classes denoting singular cannot be used.

	<b>NGELI</b> [noun class]	<b>JINA</b> [noun]	<b>Modifier -INGI</b>
	M	msichana	-----
	WA	wasichana	wengi
	KI	kijiko	-----
	VI	vijiko	vingi
	M	mkoba	-----
	MI	mikoba	mingi
	JI	jina	-----
	MA	majina	mengi
	N	nguo	-----
	N	nguo	nyingi
	U	ufunguo	-----
	U	funguo	nyingi
	U	uzuri	mwingi
	U	uzuri	mwingi
	KU	kuimba	kwingi
	KU	kuimba	kwingi
	PA	pahali	pengi
	PA	pahali	pengi
	MU	sokoni	mwingi
	MU	sokoni	mwingi

Sentensi:

**1. Vitabu vingi vimenunuliwa.**

[Many books have been bought.]

**2. Miti mingi itapandwa kesho.**

[Many trees will be planted tomorrow.]

**3. Pahali pengi pameharibika.**

[A lot of places have been damaged.]

**4. Nina rafiki wengi.**

[I have many friends.]

**5. Nilinunua kalamu nyingi.**

[I bought many pens.]

**6. Nina vitabu vingi vya Kiswahili.**

[I have many Kiswahili books.]

**7. Nimepoteza madaftari mengi.**

[I have lost many notebooks.]

**8. Wanafunzi wengi katika darasa la Kiswahili ni wazuri.**

[Many students in Kiswahili class are good.]

**9. Wanafunzi wengi wa KU ni walevi.**

[Many KU students are drunkards.]

**10. Nyumba nyingi katika Lawrence ni za zamani.**

[Many houses in Lawrence are old.]

## B). -INGINE [other; another]

As in the case of **-INGI**, the noun class marker is attached to **-INGINE** [another, other].

	<b>NGELI</b> [noun class]	<b>JINA</b> [noun]	<b>Modifier -INGINE</b>
	M	msichana	mwengine
	WA	wasichana	wengine
	KI	kiatu	kingine
	VI	viatu	vingine
	M	mkono	mwingine
	MI	mikono	mingine
	JI	gazeti	jingine
	MA	magazeti	mengine
	N	saa	nyingine
	N	saa	nyingine
	U	ukuta	mwingine
	U	kuta	nyingine
	U	uzuri	mwingine
	U	uzuri	mwingine
	KU	kupika	kwingine
	KU	kupika	kwingine
	PA	pahali	pengine
	PA	pahali	pengine
	MU	nyumbani	mwingine
	MU	nyumbani	mwingine

### Sentensi:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Fatuma ameleta kiatu <b>kingine</b> .<br>Fatuma ameleta viatu <b>vingine</b> .     | [Fatuma has brought another shoe.]<br>[Fatuma has brought other shoes.] |
| 2. Gari <b>jingine</b> limeharibika.<br>Magari <b>mengine</b> yameharibika.           | [Another car has been destroyed.]<br>[Other cars have been destroyed.]  |
| 3. John amenunua nyumba<br><b>nyingine</b> .<br>John amenunua nyumba <b>zingine</b> . | [John has bought another house.]<br>[John has bought other houses.]     |

<b>4.</b> Nitatafuta rafiki <b>mwengine</b> .	[I am searching for another friend.]
<b>5.</b> Tumenunua gari <b>jingine</b> .	[We bought another car / vehicle.]
<b>6.</b> Tumenunua nyumba <b>nyingine</b> .	[We bought another house.]
<b>7.</b> Nimepoteza simu <b>nyingine</b> .	[I have lost another phone.]
<b>8.</b> Tutaenda pahali <b>pengine</b> baada ya darasa la Kiswahili.	[We will go to another place after Kiswahili class.]
<b>9.</b> Tutaenda mkahawa <b>mwingine</b> baada ya karamu.	[We will go to another restaurant after the party.]
<b>10.</b> Tutaona filamuni <b>nyingine</b> leo usiku.	[We will see another film tonight.]
<b>11.</b> Mama yangu amenunua nguo <b>nyingine</b> .	[My mother has bought another cloth.]
<b>12.</b> Nitakula vyakula <b>vingine</b> kesho.	[I will eat other foods tomorrow.]
<b>13.</b> Nitasafisha nguo <b>zingine</b> kesho.	[I will clean other clothes tomorrow.]
<b>14.</b> Ninataka kula chakula <b>kingine</b> .	[I would like to eat another food.]
<b>15.</b> Ninataka kula tunda <b>jingine</b> .	[I would like to eat another fruit.]



# Lesson 64:

## Relative Marker -PO-

### Relative Marker -PO- [-PO- ya wakati]

The time adverb marker **-PO-** [when] goes into the verb in the same way as an object marker. When used in a sentence, **-PO-** refers specifically to time.

#### A). Forming Sentences with Relative Marker -PO-

##### 1. Mark anacheza kamari. Yeye hufurahi.

Mark anap**o**cheza kamari, yeye hufurahi.

[When Mark gambles, he is happy.]

##### 2. Tulicheza nje. Niliumia.

Tulip**o**cheza nje, niliumia.

[When we played outside, I hurt myself.]

##### 3. Tutasoma habari. Tutacheka sana.

Tutak**a**posoma habari, tutacheka sana.

[When we will read the news, we will laugh a lot.]

##### 4. Uliuliza swali. Nilijibu.

Ulip**o**uliza swali, nilijibu.

[When you asked a question, I answered.]

##### 5. Mvua ilinyesha / ilianguka. Nilikwenda nyumbani.

Mvua ilip**o**nyesha, nilikwenda nyumbani.

[When it rained, I went home.]

##### 6. Mwalimu alipika chakula. Sikula.

Mwalimu alip**o**pika chakula, sikula.

[When the teacher cooked food, I did not eat.]

### **7. Mgeni aliingia darasani. Wanafunzi walisimama.**

Mgeni alipoingia darasani, wanafunzi walisimama.

[When the guest entered the classroom, the students stood up.]

### **8. Nilifanya kosa. Mama yangu alikasirika.**

Nilipofanya kosa, mama yangu alikasirika.

[When I made a mistake, my mother was irritated / annoyed.]

### **9. Niliamka asubuhi. Nilikunywa kikombe cha kahawa.**

Nilipoamka asubuhi, nilikunywa kikombe cha kahawa.

[When I woke up in the morning, I drank a cup of coffee.]

### **10. Nitasafiri Michigan. Nitaona maziwa mengi.**

Nitakaposafiri Michigan, nitaona maziwa mengi

[When I travel to Michigan, I will see a lot of milk.]

## **B). Another Way of Forming Sentences with Relative Marker -PO-**

You can also combine the sentences in reverse order.

Mifano:

### **1. Mark anacheza kamari. Yeye hufurahi.**

Mark hufurahi, anapocheza kamari.

[Mark is usually happy when he gambles.]

### **2. Tulicheza nje. Niliumia.**

Niliumia, tulipocheza nje.

[I hurt myself when we played outside.]

### **3. Tutasoma habari. Tutacheka sana.**

Tutacheka sana, tutakaposoma habari.

[We will laugh a lot when we will read the news.]

#### **4. Uliuliza swali. Nilijibu.**

Nilijibu, ulipouliza swali.

[I answered when you asked a question.]

#### **5. Mvua ilinyesha / ilianguka. Nilikwenda nyumbani.**

Nilikwenda nyumbani, mvua iliponyesha.

[I went home when it rained.]

#### **6. Mwalimu alipika chakula. Sikula.**

Sikula, mwalimu alipopika chakula.

[I did not eat when the teacher cooked food.]

#### **7. Mgeni aliingia darasani. Wanafunzi walisimama.**

Wanafunzi walisimama, mgeni alipoingia darasani.

[The students stood up when the guest entered the classroom.]

#### **8. Nilifanya kosa. Mama yangu alikasirika.**

Mama yangu alikasirika, nilipofanya kosa.

[My mother became irritated when I made a mistake.]

#### **9. Niliamka asubuhi. Nilikunywa kikombe cha kahawa.**

Nilikunywa kikombe cha kahawa, nilipoamka asubuhi.

[I drank a cup of coffee when I woke up in the morning.]

#### **10. Nitasafiri Michigan. Nitaona maziwa mengi.**

Nitaona maziwa mengi, nitakaposafiri Michigan.

[I will see a lot of milk when I travel to Michigan.]

**1. Nilienda mkahawani nilinunua chakula.**

Nilipoenda mkahawani, nilinunua chakula.

**2. Nitaenda sokoni. Nitahunua matunda mengi.**

Nitakapoenda sokoni, nitanunua matunda mengi.

**3. Anaenda baani. Hukunywa / Hunywa pombe nyingi.**

Anapoenda baari, yeye hunywa pombe nyingi.

**4. Alienda maktabani. Alisoma sana.**

Alipoenda maktabani, alisoma sana.

**5. Wanafunzi walifanya kazi ya nyumbani. Walichoka sana.**

Wanafunzi walipofanya kazi ya nyumbani, walichoka sana.

# Lesson 65:

## Musical Instruments

Musical Instruments [Ala za Muziki]	
tari	[small drum]
kayamba	[rattle]
marimba	[marimba / xylophone / finger piano / vibraphone / stringed gourd instrument]
baragumu	[clarion / trumpet]
firimbi	[whistle]
zumari	[three piece, double reed, wind instrument]
tarumbeta	[trumpet]
njuga	[ankle bells]
ngoma	[drum]
kinanda	[organ / harmonium]
cherewa	[coconut maracas]
msondo	[large, long drum]
gitaa	[guitar]
zeze	[banjo]
piano	[piano]
udi	[lute]
gambusi	[mandolin]
fidla	[fiddle / violin]
chapuo	[small, two-headed drum]
nai	[type of flute]
maruwasi	[type of drum]
dafu	[daf / tambourine]
upata	[gong]
parapanda	[trumpet / last trump]
buruji	[bugle]
kinubi	[Nubian harp / lyre / banjo]
harimuni / kodian	[accordion]

## Question Formation

Mifano:

### **1. Wewe unapenda ala gani za muziki?**

[What musical instruments do you like?]

a). Mimi ninapenda \_\_\_\_\_. [I like \_\_\_\_\_.]

b). Mimi sipendi \_\_\_\_\_. [I do not like \_\_\_\_\_.]

### **2. Wewe hupendi ala gani za muziki?**

[What musical instruments don't you like?]

b). Mimi sipendi \_\_\_\_\_. [I do not like \_\_\_\_\_.]

### **3. Wewe unapenda kucheza ala gani ya muziki?**

[What musical instrument do you like to play?]

a). Mimi ninapenda kucheza \_\_\_\_\_. [I like to play \_\_\_\_\_.]

b). Mimi sipendi kucheza \_\_\_\_\_. [I do not like to play \_\_\_\_\_.]